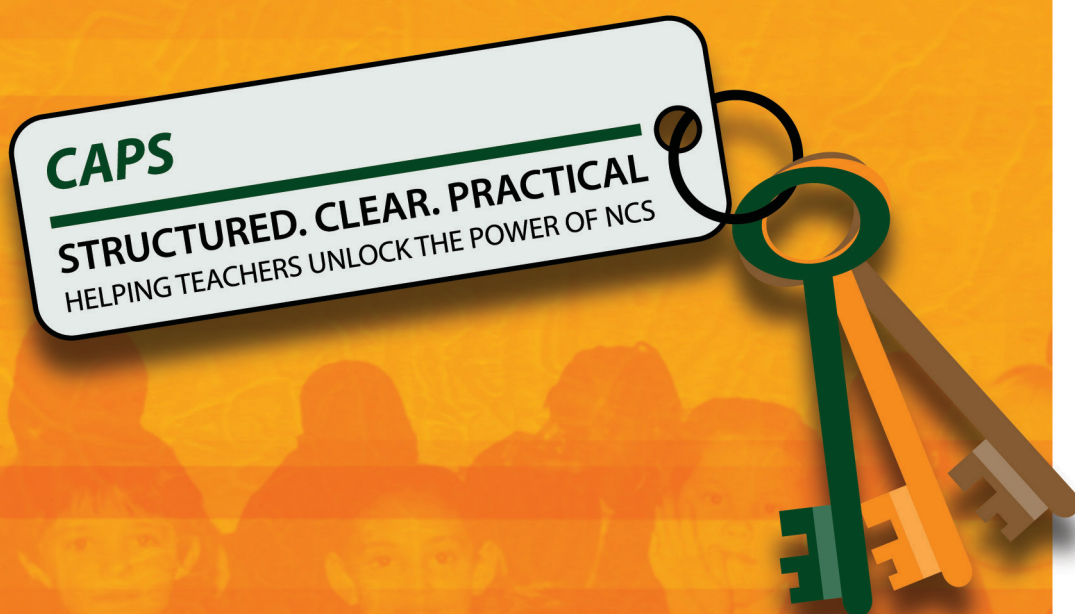


*IsiTatimende soHlelo lweziFundo  
lukaZwelonke (uTAHFUZWE)*

*IsiTatimende seNqubomgomo  
yoHlelo lweziFundo nokuHlola*



*Isigaba seMfundo  
nokuQeqesha okuQhubekayo  
AmaBanga 10-12*





**basic education**

Department:  
Basic Education  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**ISITATIMENDE SENQUBOMGOMO YOHLELO  
LOKUFUNDA NOKUHLOLA  
AMABANGA 10-12**

**ISIZULU ULIMI LWASEKHAYA**

## DISCLAIMER

In view of the stringent time requirements encountered by the Department of Basic Education to effect the necessary editorial changes and layout to the Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statements and the supplementary policy documents, possible errors may occur in the said documents placed on the official departmental websites.

There may also be vernacular inconsistencies in the language documents at Home-, First and Second Additional Language levels which have been translated in the various African Languages. Please note that the content of the documents translated and versioned in the African Languages are correct as they are based on the English generic language documents at all three language levels to be implemented in all four school phases.

If any editorial, layout or vernacular inconsistencies are detected, the user is kindly requested to bring this to the attention of the Department of Basic Education.

E-mail: [capslangcomments@dbe.gov.za](mailto:capslangcomments@dbe.gov.za) or fax (012) 328 9828

## Department of Basic Education

222 Struben Street  
Private Bag X895  
Pretoria 0001  
South Africa  
Tel: +27 12 357 3000  
Fax: +27 12 323 0601

120 Plein Street Private Bag X9023  
Cape Town 8000  
South Africa  
Tel: +27 21 465 1701  
Fax: +27 21 461 8110  
Website: <http://www.education.gov.za>

© 2011 Department of Basic Education

ISBN: 978-1-4315-0540-1

Design and Layout by: Ndabase Printing Solution

Printed by: Government Printing Works

## FOREWORD BY THE MINISTER



Our national curriculum is the culmination of our efforts over a period of seventeen years to transform the curriculum bequeathed to us by apartheid. From the start of democracy we have built our curriculum on the values that inspired our Constitution (Act 108 of 1996). The Preamble to the Constitution states that the aims of the Constitution are to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights;
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person;
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people and every citizen is equally protected by law; and
- build a united and democratic South Africa able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

Education and the curriculum have an important role to play in realising these aims.

In 1997 we introduced outcomes-based education to overcome the curricular divisions of the past, but the experience of implementation prompted a review in 2000. This led to the first curriculum revision: the *Revised National Curriculum Statement Grades R-9* and the *National Curriculum Statement Grades 10-12* (2002).

Ongoing implementation challenges resulted in another review in 2009 and we revised the *Revised National Curriculum Statement* (2002) and the *National Curriculum Statement Grades 10-12* to produce this document.

From 2012 the two National Curriculum Statements, for *Grades R-9* and *Grades 10-12* respectively, are combined in a single document and will simply be known as the *National Curriculum Statement Grades R-12*. The *National Curriculum Statement for Grades R-12* builds on the previous curriculum but also updates it and aims to provide clearer specification of what is to be taught and learnt on a term-by-term basis.

The *National Curriculum Statement Grades R-12* represents a policy statement for learning and teaching in South African schools and comprises of the following:

- (a) Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statements (CAPS) for all approved subjects listed in this document;
- (b) *National policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the National Curriculum Statement Grades R-12*; and
- (c) *National Protocol for Assessment Grades R-12*.

A handwritten signature in black ink, which appears to read 'Angie Motshekga'.

**MRS ANGIE MOTSHEKGA, MP**  
**MINISTER OF BASIC EDUCATION**



## OKUQUKETHWE

<b>ISIGABA SOKU-1: ISINGENISO SESITATIMENDE SENQUBOMGOMO YOHLELO LOKUFUNDA NOKUHLOLA.....</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1 Isendlalelo.....	3
1.2 Ukubuka ngamafuphi.....	3
1.3 Izinhloso ezivamile zoHlelo lweziFundo lwaseNingizimu Afrika .....	4
1.4 Ukwabiwa kwesikhathi.....	6
1.4.1 IsiGaba esiyisiSekelo.....	6
1.4.2 IsiGaba esiPhakathi neNdawo .....	7
1.4.3 IsiGaba esiPhakeme .....	7
1.4.4 IBanga le-10 kuya kwele-12.....	8
<b>ISIGABA SESI-2: UKWETHULWA KWEZILIMI .....</b>	<b>9</b>
2.1 Izilimi esiTatimendeni seNqubomgomo oHlelweni lokuFunda nokuHlola.....	9
2.2 Izinhlosongqangi zokufunda izilimi.....	10
2.3 Ukubuka ngamafuphi uHlelo lokuFunda lolimi .....	11
2.4 Izizathu zokufundisa amakhono olimi.....	11
2.5 Izindlela zokufundisa ulimi.....	12
2.6 Ukwabiwa kwesikhathi oHlelweni lweziFundo .....	14
2.7 Izidingo zokufundisa isiZulu ULimi LwaseKhaya njengesifundo.....	14
<b>ISIGABA SESI-3: OKUQUKETHWE KANYE NOHLELO LOKUFUNDISA.....</b>	<b>16</b>
3.1 Ukulalela nokukhuluma .....	16
3.2 Ukufunda nokubukela.....	25
3.3 Ukubhala nokwethula .....	34
3.4 Izakhiwo kanye nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi .....	45
3.5 Izinhlelo zokufundisa.....	46
3.5.1 IBanga le-10: uHlelo lokuFundisa .....	48
3.5.2 IBanga le-11 nanye: uHlelo lokuFundisa .....	60
3.5.3 IBanga le-12: uHlelo lokuFundisa .....	72

<b>ISIGABA SESI-4: UKUHLOLA OLIMINI LWASEKHAYA.....</b>	<b>83</b>
<b>4.1 Isingeniso.....</b>	<b>83</b>
<b>4.2 Ukuhlolwa okungamiselwe migomo noma kwansuku zonke .....</b>	<b>83</b>
<b>4.3 Ukuhlola okumiselwe imigomo.....</b>	<b>83</b>
<b>4.4 UHlelo lokuHlola .....</b>	<b>87</b>
4.4.1 Ukubuka ngamafuphi .....	87
4.4.2 Izivivinyo.....	91
<b>4.5 Ukuqopha kanye nokubika.....</b>	<b>94</b>
<b>4.6 Ukumodareytha ukuhlola .....</b>	<b>95</b>
4.6.1 Ukuhlola okumiselwe imigomo kwasesikoleni (i-SBA).....	95
4.6.2 Amathaskhi okuhlolwa kwama-orali .....	95
<b>4.7 Isiphetho ngamafuphi .....</b>	<b>96</b>
<b>IZINCAZELO ZAMAGAMA.....</b>	<b>97</b>
<b>I-APHENDIKSI: IZAKHIWO KANYE NEZIMISO ZOLIMI (ISHADI OKUMELE KUBHEKWE KULO)..</b>	<b>106</b>



# ISIGABA SOKU-1: ISINGENISO SESITATIMENDE SENQUBOMGOMO YOHLELO LOKUFUNDA NOKUHLOLA

## 1.1. Isendlalelo

*IsiTatimende SoHlelo LweziFundo LukaZwelonke seBanga-R kuya kwele-12 (uTaHFuZwe)* sikhombisa inqubomgomo yezinhlelo zezifundo kanye nezokuhlola emkhakheni wokufunda esikoleni.

Ukuze kwenziwe ngcono ukusetshenziswa kwaso, kwadingeka ukuthi kube nezichibiyelo ezithile ezizoqala ukusebenza ngoMasingana ngonyaka wezi-2012. Kwabe sekubhalwa umqulu owodwa odidiyele *IsiTatimende SeNqubomgomo YoHlelo LweziFundo NokuHlola* saleso naleso sifundo, okuwumqulu othatha isikhundla *seziTatimende zesiFundo, umHlahlandlela woHlelo lokuFunda kanye nomHlahlandlela wokuHlola Izifundo eBangeni-R kuya kwele-12*.

## 1.2 Ukubuka ngamafuphi

- (a) *IsiTatimende SoHlelo LweziFundo LukaZwelonke seBanga-R kuya kwele-12 (kuMasingana ngonyaka wezi-2012)* simela inqubomgomo yokufunda nokufundisa ezikoleni zaseNingizimu Afrika futhi siqukethe lokhu:
  - (i) NesiTatimende seNqubomgomo yoHlelo LweziFundo nokuHlola kuleso naleso sifundo esifundwayo.
  - (ii) Umqulu weNqubomgomo, i-*National Policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the National Curriculum Statement IBanga-R kuya kwele-12, kanye*
  - (iii) Nomqulu weNqubomgomo, i-*National Protocol for Assessment IBanga-R kuya kwele-12 kuMasingana ngonyaka we-2012*).
- (b) *IsiTatimende SoHlelo LweziFundo LukaZwelonke seBanga-R-12 (kuMasingana 2012), sithatha indawo yeziTatimende zoHlelo LweziFundo lukaZwelonke ezimbili ezikhona njengamanje; okuyilezi*
  - (i) *IsiTatimende soHlelo LweziFundo LukaZwelonke Olubukeziwe IBanga-R kuya kwelesi-9, IGazethi KaHulumeni ye-23406 zingama-31 kuNhlaba ngonyaka wezi -2002 kanye*
  - (ii) *IsiTatimende soHlelo LweziFundo LukaZwelonke IBanga le-10 kuya kwele-12, IGazethi KaHulumeni ye-25545 ziyi-6 kuMfumfu ngonyaka we-2003 neye-27594 ziyi-17 kuNhlaba ngonyaka we-2005.*
- (c) *IsiTatimende soHlelo LweziFundo lukaZwelonke esibekwe sacaciswa esigabeni u-b(i) kanye no- (ii) siqukethe le miqule yenqubomgomo elandelayo esizomiswa ukusetshenziswa kuthi esikhundleni sayo kungene isiTatimende soHlelo LweziFundo IBanga-R kuya kwele -12 kusuka ngonyaka wezi-2012 kuya kowezi-2014:*
  - (i) Isifundo/isiTatimende sesiFundo, umHlahlandlela woHlelo lokuFunda kanye nomHlahlandlela wokuHlola kwesiFundo IBanga-R kuya kwelesi-9 kanye neBanga le-10 kuya kwele -12;
  - (ii) Umqulu wenqubomgomo, i-*National Policy on Assessment and Qualification for Schools in the General Education and Training Band okwashicilelwa kwaba umthetho kuGovernment Notice No.124 kuGovernment Gazette No. 29626 mhla ziyi-12 kuNhlolanja ngonyaka wezi-2007.*
  - (iii) Umqulu weNqubomgomo, i-*National Senior Certificate: iKhwafikheshini yezinga lesi-4 kuNational Qualifications Framework (NQF)*, elishicilelwa laba semthethweni kuGovernment Gazette No. 27819 mhla zingama- 20 kuNtulikazi ngonyaka wezi-2005;



- (iv) Umqulu weNqubomgomo, *isichibiyelo somqulu wenqubomgomo, weNational Senior Certificate: iKhwalifikheshini yezinga lesi-4 kuNational Qualifications Framework (NQF)*, ukubhekelela izingane ezinezidingo eziyisipesheli, elethulwa kuGovernment Gazette, No. 29466 mhla ziye-11 kuZibandlala ngonyaka wezi-2006, lifakiwe nalo kulo mqulu wenqubomgomo, *i-National Policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the National Curriculum Statement IBanga-R kuya kwele-12; kanye;*
- (v) Nomqulu wenqubomgomo, *isichibiyelo somqulu wenqubomgomo, weNational Senior Certificate: iKhwalifikheshini yezinga lesi-4 kuNational Qualifications Framework (NQF)*, ukubhekelela i-National Protocol for Assessment (IBanga-R kuya kwele-12), elashicilelwa laba semthethweni kuGovernment Notice No. 1267 kuGovernment Gazette No. 29467 mhla ziye-11 kuZibandlala ngonyaka wezi-2006;
- (d) Umqulu wenqubomgomo, *i-National policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the National Curriculum Statement IBanga-R kuya kwele-12*, kanye nezigaba ezitholakala esiTatimendeni seNqubomgomo soHlelo lweziFundo nokuHlola njengoba kubekiwe ezahlukeni kusuka kwesesi-2,3 kanye nesesi-4 kulo mqulu kuyingxenywe yemithetho nemigomo yesiTatimende soHlelo lweziFundo IBanga-R kuya kwele-12. Ngelokho-ke, ngokuka Section 6 A weSouth African Schools Act, 1996 (Act No.84 of 1996,) kwakha isisekelo sokuthi uNgqongqoshe weMfundo esemaZingeni aPhansi akwazi ukunquma imiphumela kanye nemigomo emincane nje okungasukelwa kuyo, kanye nenqubo, nendlela yokwenza ukuhlola kokuphumelela komfundi ukuba kusetshenziswe ezikoleni zomphakathi nalezo ezizimele.

### 1.3 Izinhloso ezivamile zohlelo LweziFundo zaseNingizimu Afrika

- (a) *IsiTatimende soHlelo lweziFundo lukaZwelonke IBanga-R kuya kwele-12* sikhombisa lokho okuthathwa ngokuthi kungulwazi, amakhono namagugu adinga ukufundwa ezikoleni zaseNingizimu Afrika. Lolu Hlelo lweziFundo luhlose ukuqinisekisa ukuthi abafundi bathola babuye basebenzise ulwazi namakhono njengendlela ahambisana ngayo nezimpilo zabo. Ngale ndlela uHlelo lweziFundo lukhulisa ulwazi lwezimo abaphila kuzona, babenzwelo kuzibopho zomhlaba jikelele.
- (b) *IsiTatimende SoHlelo LweziFundo LukaZwelonke seBanga-R kuya kwele-12* sihllose lokhu:
- Ukuhlomisa abafundi, noma ngabe bavela kuziphi izimo zenhlalo yomphakathi nezomnotho, ubuzwe, ubulili, ukukwazi ukusebenzisa umzimba nengqondo/ukuhlakanipha, ngolwazi, amasu nokungamagugu adingekayo ukuze bakwazi ukuzenelisa, nokubamba iqhaza elibonakalayo emphakathini njengezakhamuzi zezwe elikhululekile.
  - Ukuvumela abafundi ukuba bangene emikhakheni yemfundo ephakeme.
  - Ukwenza kube lula kubafundi ukwedlulela ezikhungweni zemisebenzi ngemuva kokuqeda esikoleni/ imfundo yamabanga apha keme; kanye
  - Nokwedlulisela kubaqashi ulwazi oluphelele ngamakhono nakwazi ukukwenza ngempumelelo umfundi.
- (c) *IsiTatimende soHlelo lweziFundo lukaZwelonke seBanga-R kuya kwele -12* sesekwe yile migomo elandelayo:
- *Ukuguquka kwezenhlalo yomphakathi;* ukubhekelela ukungalingani kwezemfundo ngesikhathi esedlule ukuze kulungiswe, nokuthi amathuba okufunda alinganayo atholwe yiwo wonke umphakathi;
  - *Ukufunda ngokuphapheme nangokuhlolisisa;* ukukhuthaza indlela yokufunda ngokuphapheme nangokuhlolisisa ekufundeni , kunokuthi abafundi bamane bagxishe emakhanda lokho abanikwe khona bebe bengayiqondi incazelo yakho;

- *Ulwazi oluphakeme namakhono aphakeme*, ubuncane obemukelekile umthetho wokulinganisa ulwazi okumele luzuzwe ebangeni ngalinye kumele bucaciswe, kubekwe nemigomo ephezulu okumele izuzwe kuzo zonke izifundo;
  - *Inqubekela phambili yolwazi*; okuqukethwe nengqikithi yalelo nalelo banga kukhombise inqubekela phambili ukusuka kokulula kuya kokulukhuni.
  - *Amalungelo esintu, ukudidiyela, ubulungiswa bezemvelo nezenhlalo yomphakathi*; ukufaka imigomo nenkambiso yobulungiswa bezemvelo nezenhlalo kanye namalungelo esintu njengoba echaziwe kumThethosisekelo waseNingizimu Afrika. IsiTatimende soHlelo lweziFundo lukaZwelonke seBanga-R kuya kwele-12 (Jikelele) sinozwela ezindabeni zokwehlukahlukana kwesintu njengobuphofu, ukungalingani, ubuzwe, ubulili, ulimi, ubudala nokukhubazeka kanye nezinye izimo;
  - *Ukwazisa ngezinhlelo zolwazi lwendabuko*, ukwazisa ukunotha komlando namasiko aleli zwe, nomthelela obalulekile wokufundisa ngamagugu aqukethwe ngumThethosisekelo okube nawo njengomsuka wenguquko ukusiza ekuguquleni amagugu abafundi; kanye
  - *Nokukholakala, uhlonze kanye nokwenza ngempumelelo*, ukuhlinzeka ngohlobo lwemfundo olungaqhathaniseka ngokuqeqesheka nangazo zonke ezinye izindlela njengakwamanye amazwe.
- (d) Isitatimende Sohlelo lweziFundo Lukazwelonke seBanga-R kuya kwele-12 sihlose ukukhiqiza abafundi abazokwazi :
- Ukubona baxazulule izinkinga, bakwazi nokwenza izinqumo besebenzisa ukucabanga ngokuhlaziya nangobuchule;
  - Ukusebenza ngokuzinikela nabanye njengamalungu eqembu;
  - Ukulungiselela, bakwazi ukuziphatha bona baphathe nemisebenzi yabo ngokuyikho;
  - Ukuqoqa, bahlaziye, bahlele, bahlanganise, bahlolisise ngokucubungula ulwazi.
  - Ukuxoxisana ngempumelelo besebenzisa izinto ezibukwayo, ukufanekisa ngezimpawu kanye namanye amakhono olimi ezimweni ezahlukene;
  - Ukusebenzisa isayensi nobuchwepheshe ngempumelelo nangokuhlolisisa bekhombisa nokuzinikela kwezemvelo kanye nempilo yabanye; kanye
  - Nokukhombisa ukuqondisisa umhlaba njengenkundla yezinhlelo ezihlobene ngokubona ukuthi izimo zokuxazulula izinkinga azenzeki ngazodwana.
- (e) *Ukuhlanganisa izinhlobo zabafundi* yikho okumele kube ngumgogodla wokuhlela, ukulungiselela, nokufundisa kuleso naleso sikole. Lokhu kungenzeka kuphela uma bonke othisha bekuqonda kahle ukuthi bazobabona futhi babasize kanjani abafundi abanezihibe ekufundeni, nokuthi bazokuhlelela kanjani ukwehlukahlukana kwabafundi.

Okusemqoka ngokuhlanganisa izinhlobo zabafundi, ukuqinisekisa ukuthi zonke izithiyo ziyabonwa zigudluzwe ngayo yonke indlela ezikoleni, kumbandakanya othisha, amakomidi asemahhovisi ezemfundo, amakomidi ezikoleni, abazali kanye nezikole ezikhethekile ezisetshenziswa njengemithombo yolwazi. Ukugudluza izithiyo emakilasini, othisha bangasebenzisa amaqhinga ahlukeni ezinhlelo zezifundo njengalezo ezitholakala eMnyangweni wezeMfundo eyisisekelo: *Guidelines for Inclusive Teaching and Learning (2010)*.

## 1.4 Ukwabiwa kwesikhathi

### 1.4.1 IsiGaba esiyisiSekelo

- (a) Isikhathi sokufundisa emkhakheni weSigaba Esiyisekelo sinjengoba sikhonjisiwe kuleli thebula elingezansi:

ISIFUNDO	IBANGA-R (AMAHORA)	IBANGA LOKU-1 KUYA KWELESI-2 (AMAHORA)	IBANGA LESI-3 (AMAHORA)
ULimi lwaseKhaya	10	7/8	7/8
ULimi lokuQala lokwEngeza		2/3	3/4
Izibalo	7	7	7
Amakhono Empilo:	<b>6</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>7</b>
• Ulwazi lokuqala	(1)	(1)	(2)
• Ubuciko bokusungula	(2)	(2)	(2)
• Isifundo sokuzivocavoca	(2)	(2)	(2)
• Okuqondene nomuntu uqobo kanye nokuphila emphakathini	(1)	(1)	(1)
<b>ISAMBA</b>	<b>23</b>	<b>23</b>	<b>25</b>

- (b) Isikhathi sokufundisa seBanga-R, 1 neBanga lesi-2, amahora angama-23 kuthi IBanga lesi-3 kube ngamahora angama-25.
- (c) Izilimi zabelwe amahora ayi-10 eBangeni-R kuya kwelesi-2 kanye namahora ayi-11 eBangeni lesi-3. Isibalo esiphezulu samahora ayisi-8 nesibalo esiphansi esingamahora ayi-7 sabelwe ULimi lwaseKhaya kanye nesibalo esiphansi esingamahora ama-2 nesibalo esiphezulu esingamahora ama-3 soLimi lokuQala lokwEngeza eBangeni loku-1 kuya kwelesi-2. EBangeni lesi-3 isibalo esiphezulu esingamahora ayisi-8 nobuncane obungamahora ayisi-7 sabelwe iziLimi zaseKhaya kanye nobuncane obungamahora ama-3 nobuningi obungamahora ama-4 oLimini lokuQala lokwEngeza.
- (d) Esifundweni samakhono olwazi lokuqala, kwabiwe Ihora eli-1 eBangeni-R kuya kwelesi-2 kanye namahora ama-2 njengoba kukhonjisiwe ngamahora akubakaki ethebulini eBangeni lesi-3:

**1.4.2 IsiGaba esiPhakathi neNdawo (iBanga lesi- 4 kuya kwelesi-6)**

Leli thebula elingezansi likhombisa izifundo nesikhathi sokufundisa esibekiwe sesigaba esiphakathi nendawo:

ISIFUNDO	AMAHORA
ULimi lwaseKhaya	6
ULimi lokuQala lokwEngeza	5
Izibalo	6
Isayensi nobuchwepheshe	3,5
Isayensi yezokuhlalisana kwabantu	3
Amakhono Empilo	<b>4</b>
• Ubuciko bokusungula	<b>(1.5)</b>
• Isifundo sokuvocavoca umzimba	<b>(1)</b>
• Okuqondene nomuntu uqobo kanye nokuphila emphakathini	<b>(1.5)</b>
<b>ISAMBA</b>	<b>27,5</b>

**1.4.3 IsiGaba esiPhakeme**

(a) Isikhathi sokufundisa IsiGaba EsiPhakeme simi ngale ndlela:

ISIFUNDO	AMAHORA
ULimi LwaseKhaya	<b>5</b>
ULimi lokuQala lokwEngeza	<b>4</b>
Izibalo	<b>4.5</b>
Isayensi yezemvelo	<b>3</b>
Isayensi yokuhlalisana komphakathi	<b>3</b>
Ezobuchwepheshe	<b>2</b>
Isayensi yokuphathwa komnotho	<b>2</b>
Ukwazi ngamakhono empilo	<b>2</b>
Ubuciko bokusungula	<b>2</b>
<b>ISAMBA</b>	<b>27,5</b>

**1.4.4 IBanga le-10 kuya kwele-12**

(a) Isikhathi sokufundisa eBangeni le 10 kuya kwele-12 simi ngale ndlela:

ISIFUNDO	UKWABIWA KWESIKHATHI NGESONTO (AMAHORA)
ULimi LwaseKhaya	4.5
ULimi lokuQala lokwEngeza	4.5
Izibalo	4.5
Ukwazi amakhono empilo	2
Okungenani kungakhethwa izifundo ezintathu <b>eqoqweni B</b> Isengezelelo B, Ithebula B1 kuya ku-B8 kumqulu wenqubomgomo, <i>National policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the National Curriculum Statement IBanga-R kuya kwele-12</i> , isifundo ngenkombandlela ebhalwe esigabeni sama-28 kumqulu weNqubomgomo obhalwe ngenhla.	12 (3xAmahora ama-4)
<b>ISAMBA</b>	<b>27,5</b>

Ukwabiwa kwesikhathi ngesonto kungasetshenziswa kuphela esibalweni esiphansi esidingekayo sezifundo zesiTatimende soHlelo LweziFundo lukaZwelonke (TAHFUZE) njengoba kukhonjisiwe ngenhla, akumele kusetshenziswe kunoma yiziphi izifundo ezengeziwe ohlwini lwenani lezifundo ezivunyelwe. Uma umfundi efisa ukwengeza ezinye izifundo, isikhathi kumele sandiswe ukwenelisa lezo zifundo.

## ISIGABA SESI-2: UKWETHULWA KWEZILIMI

### 2.1 Izilimi esiTatimendeni seNqubomgomo oHlelweni lokuFunda nokuHlola

Ulimi yisikhali sokucabanga nokuxhumana. Luphinde lube okusetshenziswayo kwamasiko nobuhle okwabelwana ngakho emphakathini othile, okwenza lowo mphakathi uqondisise indawo ohlala kuyo. Ukufunda ukusebenzisa ulimi ngempumelelo kwenza kube lula kubafundi ukuba bathole ulwazi, ukusho imvelaphi yabo, imizwa nemibono, nokuxhumana nabanye nokulawula indawo yabo. Ulimi lwenza impilo ibe ngcono kunalokhu eyikho, ibe ngokunye kunalokhu eyikho futhi icace kunalokhu eyikho. Ulimi luphinde lwenze ukuthi ukwehlukana ngamasiko nobudlelwano nokuhlalisana kwesintu kuvezwe kuphinde kwakheke, futhi yilona ulimi olwenza ukuthi lokho okusuke sekwakhiwe kuguqulwe, kunwetshwe kuphinde kucoyisiswe.

#### Amazinga Olimi

Ukufundwa kolimi eBangeni le-10 kuya kwele-12 kumbandakanya zonke izilimi ezisemthethweni, okuyi-Afrikaans, i-English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, i-Sepedi (Sesotho sa Leboa), i-Sesotho, i-Setswana, i-Siswati, i-Tshivenda, i-Xitsonga kanye nezilimi ezingekho emthethweni. Lezi zilimi zingafundiswa emazingeni ehlukenene.

**ULimi lwaseKhaya** yilo abafundi abalufunda kuqala. Noma kunjalo izikole eziningi eNingizimu Afrika azilufundisi ULimi lwaseKhaya kubo bonke abafundi ababhalise kuleso naleso sikole, kunalokho abafundi kufundiswa ulimi olulodwa noma izilimi ezimbili ngezina loLimi lwaseKhaya. Ngakho-ke uma kushiwo ULimi lwaseKhaya noLimi lokuQala lokwEngeza, kushiwo kuphela impumelelo yokufundisa ngalelo zinga, akusho ulimi abafundi abaluncela noma abalufunda (njengoba kwenzeka ezilimini ezengeziwe). Ukuze kungabi bikho ukudideka kulo mqulu, uma kukhulunywa ngoLimi lwaseKhaya kushiwo izinga okufundiswa ngalo, hhayi ulimi uqobo.

**Izinga loLimi lwaseKhaya** linikeza ithuba lokuqhakambisa ukusetshenziswa kolimi ngempumelelo, okuyikhona okukhombisa ikhono lokuxhumana nabanye abantu okudingekayo empilweni kanye namakhono okuhlakanipha kwezemfundo nokusetshenziswa kulo lonke uHlelo lweziFundo. Kuleli zinga kugcizelelwa ukufundisa amakhono okulalela, okukhuluma, okufunda nokubhala. Leli zinga liphinde linike abafundi ikhono lezombhalo yobuciko, lokuncoma, lokucabangela nokwakha umfanekisomqondo ozobasiza ukuthi bakwazi ukuqamba kabusha, ukwakha umfanekiso nokubahlomisa nokuqonda umphakathi abahlala kuwo. Ngakolunye uhlangothi, kusukela eBangeni lesi-7 kuya phezulu ukugcizelela nokwabiwa kwamamaki okulalela nokukhuluma kwenziwe kwaba ngaphansi kwalawo makhono okufunda nokubhala.

**Izinga loLimi lokuQala lokwEngeza** lwenza kubukeke sengathi abafundi basuke bengenalolulwazi lwalolu limi ngenkathi beqala esikoleni. UHlelo lweziFundo emabangeni aphansi lubheke ekuthuthukiseni ikhono lomfundi ukuze aluqonde futhi akwazi nokukhuluma. Leli zinga liqhakambisa ukusetshenziswa kolimi ngempumelelo, okuyikhona okukhombisa ikhono lokuxhumana okunhlobonhlobo okudingekayo empilweni yansuku zonke yokuxhumana komphakathi nasemfundweni. EBangeni lesi-2 nelesi-3 abafundi baqala ukubhala nokufunda ngalolu limi abasuke kade bekhuluma ngalo. Lapha, abafundi baphinde balekelelwe wukusebenzisa ulwazi lwabo loLimi lwaseKhaya.

EsiGabeni esiPhakathi neNdawo kanye nesiGaba esiPhakeme abafundi bayaqhubeka bathuthukise amakhono abo okulalela, okukhuluma, okufunda kanye nokubhala. Kulezi zigaba iningi labafundi lifundiswa ngoLimi lokuQala lokwEngeza, i-English, futhi kumele lejwayezwe lona kakhulu. Kumele kugcizelelwe ukuthi abafundi basebenzise lona lolu limi uma becabanga. Lokhu kwenza abafundi bathuthukise amakhono okuhlakanipha kwezemfundo, abasuke bewadinga ekufundeni izifundo ezifana nesayensi ngoLimi lokuQala lokwEngeza. Babuye bagxile kakhudlwana emibhalweni yobuciko kanye nasekwazini ukuzakhela izithombe emiqondweni besebenzisa uLimi lokuQala lokwEngeza.

Ngesikhathi laba bafundi befika eBangeni le-10, kumele bebe sebelukhuluma kahle uLimini lokuQala lokwEngeza lapho bexhumana nabanye kanye nasemakhonweni okuhlakanipha emfundo. Nokho-ke okuhlalukayo, ukuthi kuleli zinga baningi abafundi abasuke bengakakwazi ukusebenzisa uLimi lokuQala lokwEngeza ekuxhumaneni ngempumelelo. Inselelo yeBanga le-10 kuya kwele-12 ukuthi laba bafundi balekelelwe futhi kuphinde kwethulwe uhlelo lokubeseka, ukuze bakwazi ukufinyelela emazingeni adingeka eBangeni le-12. Lawo mazinga kumele kube yilawo angenza ukuthi abafundi bakwazi ukusebenzisa uLimi lokuQala lokwEngeza ngempumelelo ezingeni eliphezulu lokukhuluma ngenhloso yokubalungiselela imfundo ephakeme noma izikhungo zemisebenzi.

## 2.2 Inhlosongqangi yokufunda izilimi

Ukufunda ulimi kumele kwelekelele abafundi ukuthi bakwazi uku:

- Thola amakhono olimi adingekayo ekufundeni zonke izifundo ezisoHlelweni LweziFundo.
- Lalela, bakhulume, bafunde/babukele babuye babhale/bethule ulimi ngokuzethemba nangokulujabulela. La makhono kanye nendlela yobuka izinto yikho okuyisisekelo sokufunda kwempilo yonke.
- Sebenzisa ulimi ngendlela efanele, kucatshangelwa izethameli, inhloso kanye nezimo.
- Veza nokwesekela imibono, imicabango nemizwa yabo ngokukhuluma nangokubhala ngokuzethemba ukuze bakwazi ukuzimela nokucabanga ngokuhlaziya.
- Sebenzisa ulimi nemicabango yabo ukuze bathole okuningi ngabo, baphinde bazi nomhlaba abaphila kuwo. Lokhu kuzokwenza bakwazi ukukhombisa ulwazi lwabo nalokho abakufundile ngomhlaba jikelele, bekusho ngomlomo kanye nangokubhala.
- Sebenzisa ulimi ekufinyeleleni nasekwengameleni ulwazi lokufunda kulo lonke uHlelo lweziFundo nakwezinye izimo ezinhlobonhlobo. Ulwazi lokufunda nokubhala luyikhono elibaluleke kakhulu esikhathini samanje sokuqhakambisa ulwazi, lwakha isisekelo semfundo eqhubeka unomphela empilweni yomuntu, kanye
- Nokusebenzisa ulimi ukuze bakwazi ukucabanga bahlolisise; baveze imibono ephusile ngezinto eziphathelele nokuziphatha nalokho okungamagugu; basebenzise amatheksthi anhlobonhlobo ngokuhlolisisa, abafundi bakwazi ukubona nokuphonsa inselelo ngendlela yokubona izinto, okungamagugu, ubudlelwane bamandla obutholakala phakathi kwamatheksthi, nokufunda amatheksthi ngenhloso ethile njengokuzijabulisa, ukucwaninga noma ukuhlaziya.



### 2.3 Ukubuka ngamafuphi uhlelo lokufunda lolimi

Lolu Hlelo LweziFundo lubekwe ngokwamakhono kanye nokuqokethwe:

Amakhono olimi	
<b>Ukulalela nokukhuluma</b> <b>Ukulalela</b> <b>Inqubo yokulalela</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ngaphambi kokulalela</li> <li>• Ngesikhathi sokulalela</li> <li>• Ngemuva kokulalela</li> </ul> <b>Izinhlobo ezehlukene zokulalela</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ukulalela ngenhloso yokuthola ulwazi oluthile</li> <li>• Ukulalela ngenhloso yokuhlaziya nokuhlolisisa</li> <li>• Ukulalela ukuze uncome futhi uxhumane nabanye.</li> </ul> <b>Ukukhuluma</b> <b>Inqubo namasu okukhuluma</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ukulungiselela, ukucwaninga kanye nokuhlela</li> <li>• Ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <b>Izimpawu nezimo zamatheksthi okuxhumana ngokukhuluma</b>	<b>Ukufunda Nokubukela</b> <b>Inqubo yokufunda</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ngaphambi kokufunda</li> <li>• Ngesikhathi sokufunda</li> <li>• Ngemuva kokufunda</li> </ul> <b>Ukuhunyushwa kwamatheksthi abonwayo</b> <b>Ukuthuthuka kolwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi</b> <b>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho nokuhleleka kwamatheksthi</b> <b>Izimpawu ezigqamile zamatheksthi ayimibhalo yobuciko</b> <b>Ukubhala nokwethula</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ukuhlela/Ngaphambi kokubhala</li> <li>• Ukubhala izinhlobo zokuqala</li> <li>• Ukubuyekeza</li> <li>• Ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise</li> <li>• Ukulungisa amaphutha</li> <li>• Ukwethula umbhalo</li> <li>• Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa</li> </ul> <b>Izakhiwo kanye nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi</b>

### 2.4 Izizathu zokufundisa amakhono olimi

**Ukulalela nokukhuluma** kuwumgogodla wazo zonke izifundo. Ngokusebenzisa ngempumelelo amasu okulalela nokukhuluma, abafundi baqonda babuye bahlanganise ulwazi, bakhe ulwazi baxazulule izinkinga bakwazi nokweneka imibono nemicabango yabo. Amakhono okulalela ngokuhlolisisa enza abafundi bakwazi ukubona amagugu nezimo ezimbelwe emibhalweni, nokuphonsa inselelo olimini olubandlululayo nolukhohlisayo. Wonke la makhono okuxhumana ngokukhuluma adluliswa abonakaliswe ngokusebenzisa izakhiwo zolimi ngendlela efanele. Ukufunda izakhiwo zolimi kumele kusize ukuthi ukuxhumana ngokukhuluma kube yimpumelelo, nokuthi kubonakale izimo ulimi olusetshenziswa kuzo, okungaba ukuveza imizwa nemicabango yakho; ukwethula isikhulumi; ukunikeza imiyalelo nezinkombandlela. Amakhono okulalela afundiswayo azokhonjiswa uhlobo lombhalo kanye nenhloso yolalele.

**Ukufunda nokubukela** nakho kuwumgogodla ekufundeni okuyimpumelelo kulo lonke uHlelo LweziFundo, nasekuzimbandakanyeni emphakathini nasemsebenzini. Abafundi bathuthukisa ubuchwepheshe ekufundeni nasekubukeleni uhlu olubanzi lwamatheksthi ombhalo namatheksthi okungewona awombhalo, ngisho namatheksthi abukelwayo ukuthola ulwazi. Abafundi babona ukuthi uhlobo lwamatheksthi nolimi olusetshenziswa ngokwenhloso, izethameli nesimo luveza kanjani inhloso, izethameli nesimo samatheksthi. Ukuqonda nokuhumusha okubhaliwe nokubukelwayo kuba yimpumelelo uma umfundi eqonda izakhiwo nezimiso kanye nolwazi lwakhe ngempilo. Izimiso

zolimi zisiza abafundi ukuba baqonde indlela amatheksthi akhiwe ngayo. Abafundi kumele basebenzise amasu angaphambi kokufunda, ngesikhathi sokufunda nawangemuva kokufunda, ukuze bakwazi ukuqonda nokuhumusha amatheksthi anhlobonhlobo, njengokucabangela, ukucacisa, nokulinganisa. Abafundi kumele basebenzise amasu angaphambi kokufunda, anjengokugijimisa amehlo embhalweni, ukuze bathole izimpawu zawo, ukubheka izingxenyane zencwadi nezakhiwo zezigaba/zamatheksthi nanokuthi lokho kunamthelela muni emqondweni mayelana nokushiwoyo. Abafundi badinga ukusizwa ukuze bathole ulwazimagama ngokufunda amatheksthi anhlobonhlobo. Kulo mkhakha wokugcina wokufunda, imisebenzi eminingi ayidingi kugcizelela okutheni ngoba beyilokhu iyingxenyane yabafundi emabangeni aphansi.

**Ukubhala nokwethula** kunika abafundi ithuba lokwakha nokuxhumana nokubeka imicabango ngendlela ebumbene. Ukubhala njalo imibhalo enhlobonhlobo, imisebenzi nezifundo kwenza abafundi bakwazi ukuxhumana ngendlela enohlonze, bakwazi nokuziqambela imibhalo yabo. Inhloso yalokhu, ukukhiqiza ababhali abanekhono lokubhala abazokwazi ukusebenzisa ulwazi lwabo bakhiqize imibhalo enembayo ebhaliwe, ebonwayo, nesebenzisa izindlela eziningi zokuxhumana, ngenhloso ethile. Ulwazi lwezakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi kuzosiza abafundi bakwazi ukukhiqiza amatheksthi abumbene. Izakhiwo zolimi kumele zifundiswe ukuze bakwazi ukwakha ngazo amatheksthi ngesimo abaphila kuso. Ukusetshenziswa kwezakhiwo zolimi kumele kugxile ekuhlaziyeni imisho ezihambela yodwa. Kumele kuchazwe indlela imisho ehleleke ngayo ukuze kwakheke itheksthi, njengezindatshana ezimfushane, ama-eseyi, Incwadi nemibiko nokufundwa ngabafundi esikoleni.

La makhono angenhla kumele adidiyelwe. Lapho kudidiyelwa la makhono, ikhono okuqondweni nalo ngqo, lingacina selenzeka kwelinye. Isibonelo, umfundi olungiselela Inkulumbo-mpikiswano angafunda indaba/i-eseyi eqophisanayo bese ekwazi ukuzibhalela eyakhe enjalo, esebenzisa izakhiwo zolimi njengamagama aphikisanayo, noma amqondofana, akhomba ukulandula, izihlanganiso, njalonzalo.

**Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi** zibamba iqhaza elibalulekile ekuqondweni nasekukhiqizeni amatheksthi akhulunywayo nabhalwayo, ngakho-ke kudingeka zididiyelwe namakhono ashiwo ngenhla.

## 2.5 Izindlela zokufundisa ulimi

Izindlela zokufundisa ulimi kulo mqulu; Inqubo esekwe etheksthini, inqubo yokufunda ulimi ngokulusebenzisa, ukudidiyela kanye nokuhlola inqubo.

Inqubo **esekwe etheksthini**, nenqubo **yokufunda ulimi ngokulusebenzisa**, zeyeme kakhulu ekusebenziseni ulimi nasematheksthini akhiqiziwe.

**Inqubo esekwe etheksthini** inenhloso yokwenza ukuba abafundi bakwazi ukuzenzela, bazethembe nokuba abafundi abahlolisayo, abalobi, ababukeli nabaqambi bamatheksthi. Imbandakanya ukulalela, ukufunda, ukubukela nokuhlaziya amatheksthi ukuze baqonde ukuthi amatheksthi akhiqizwa kanjani nokuthi yini imiphumela yawo. Ngalokhu kusebenzisa amatheksthi, abafundi bafunda ngokuhlolisisa ngokulinganisa amatheksthi. Amatheksthi angempela yiwona awumthombo wolwazi nezimo zokufunda ulimi ngokulusebenzisa, ukudidiyela nokufundiswa kwezilimi. Indlela yokubheka ematheksthini kumbandakanya ukukhiqiza amatheksthi anhlobonhlobo, ngenhloso ethile, nezethameli ezithile engqondweni. Le nqubo yeyeme olwazini lokuthi amatheksthi akhiwa kanjani.

**Inqubo yokufundisa ulimi ngokulusebenzisa** ichaza ukuthi uma kufundwa ulimi umfundi kumele alusebenzise kakhulu ulimi abuye athole amathuba amaningi okuzilolonga ngalo. Abafundi bafunda ukufunda ngokuthi banikwe ithuba lokufunda okubhaliwe, bafunde nokubhala uma bethola ithuba elanele lokubhala.

**Indlela yokufundisa ulimi ngokulandela inqubo ethile** isetshenziswa uma abafundi bekhiqiza amatheksthi omlomo nabhaliwe. Abafundi bazimbandakanye ezigabeni eziningi zokulalela, ukukhuluma, ukufunda, nezinqubo zokubhala.

Kumele bacabange ngezethameli kanye nenhloso ngesikhathi kuqhutshekwa nokufunda. Lokhu kuzobasiza bakwazi ukuxhumana babeke nemibono yabo ngokukhululeka. Isibonelo. ukufundiswa kokubhala akugxili emkhqizweni kuphela, kodwa kubhekwa inhloso kanye nenqubo yokubhala. Ngesikhathi senqubo yokubhala, abafundi bafundiswa ukuhlanganisa imibono, ukucabanga ngenhloso nezethameli, ukubhala uhlaka, ukulungisa umsebenzi wabo, nokwethula osekubhaliwe, okubonakalisa ukucabanga kwabo.

### **Izindlela zokufundisa imibhalo yobuciko**

Isizathu esisemqoka sokufunda imibhalo yobuciko emakilasini ukuthuthukisa abafundi bakwazi ukubona indlela ulimi olusetshenziswe ngayo, okungaba yizifengqo, izimpawu, ubuciko, inkulumo esobala, nokudepha kwalokho abakufundayo. Nanxa amatheksthi obuciko amaningi egcwele amahlanya, izibonakaliso, ababhali abazimisele ngokubhala, babhala amanoveli, imidlalo nezinkondlo ngoba benemicabango nemibono nezinkolelo abafunda ukwabelana ngazo, noma abafunda ukuzibonakalisa kwabafundayo. Ukusebenzisa kwabo ulimi ngendlela eletha izithombe engqondweni, kuyindlela eyengeziwe yokwembula, ukuqinisa nokugqamisa imibono yabo.

Ukufundisa imibhalo yobuciko akulula neze, kodwa angeke kwenzeka ngaphandle kokuphawula nokuhumusha ngokwethembeka okwenziwa ngabafundi. Ngaphandle uma bengakwazanga ukuthi baqonde itheksthi yobuciko bona ngokwabo, bazobe bengafundanga lutho olutheni. Othisha kumele bakugweme ukuhluzela abafundi amatheksthi obuciko, abanikeze ithuba eliningi abafundi ukuba bazihluzele ngokwabo. Ukuhumusha akubheki ukuthi ubani okhuluma iqiniso nalowo osho okungeyikho. Kuphela kubhekwa lokho okwakha umqondo ophusile kofundayo.

Izindlela ezingcono zokufundisa imibhalo yobuciko zingafaka lokhu okulandelayo:

- Abafundi mabazame ukufunda kabanzi ngetheksthi ekilasini, bangaphazanyiswa ngokunikezwa omunye umsebenzi. Umsebenzi akube yikho ukufunda umbhalo ekilasini. Akungeqi emasontweni amabili. Kubalulekile ukuba abafundi baqonde kahle ukuthi kwenzekani kusaqalwa nje ukufundwa kwencwadi. Ukufunda incwadi isikhathi eside kubambezela abafundi ekuthini baqonde incwadi nesakhiwo sayo. Amanye amakilasi angakwazi ukufunda itheksthi ngaphandle kokusizwa. Empeleni, yikho lokho okumele kukhuthazwe. *Ukuhluzwa kwenkondlo* kumele kufundwe hhayi ukuthi kugcinwe ngokuhaya *izinkondlo*. Akwenziwe izinkondlo eziningi ukuze abafundi nabo bagcine sebezibhala.
- Ukuhumusha imibhalo yobuciko empeleni kuyisifundo esifanele abafundi basemaYunivesithi, akudingekile ukuthi abafundi benze lo msebenzi kuleli zinga. Noma kunjalo, inhloso yokufundisa amatheksthi ombhalo ukukhombisa abafundi ukuthi ulimi lwabo lungasetshenziswa kanjani ngobuhlakani, ngobuchule, ngokufanekisa, nangamandla okulandela umkhondo. Lokhu kudinga kubhekwe ukuthi itheksthi yakhiwe kanjani, ukukhohlisa okukuyo, ukuhleleka kabusha nokugcizelela okushiwoyo. Lo msebenzi ungaze udinge ukuhlola ukuthi hlobo luni lemifanekisomqondo ekhethwe umbhali kanye nesizathu sokukhethwa kwayo; izakhiwo zemisho nezigaba, noma ukubumbeka kwezinkondlo; ukukhethwa kwamagama, umqondo oqhubekayo etheksthini; ukusetshenziswa kwezimpawu, imisindo nemibala lapho kudingekile khona. Ingingi lalo msebenzi kumele lisuselwe embhalweni, kodwa ukuhumusha umugqa nomugqa ngokwehlukana kuyawubulala umbhalo.
- Imibhalo eqanjiwe kumele ifundiswe kanye nanoma iyiphi itheksthi yobuciko. Imisebenzi ebhalwayo echaza kabanzi ngombhalo ofundiwe ingaba wusizo ekufinyeleleni emazingeni aphezulu okuncoma kubafundi. Izingxoxo emakilasini zingaba nomphumela omuhle uma bonke abafundi bezimbandakanya. Kodwa-ke izingxoxo ezigcina ngomsebenzi obhaliwe ziba nomphumela ongcono kanye nokusizakala nxazombili.

- Elokugcina, kubalulekile ukuveza ukuthi imibhalo yobuciko ayiphathelene nokunikeza izimpendulo eziyizo. Itheksthi yonke isho okuthile hhayi izicucu zayo, ukuyifunda itheksthi ngokuyikho kumbandakanya ukuyifunda yonke ngendlela yenqubo yokuhumusha, yokuqamba ngokombono wakho nangokwenza imisebenzi ethile ukuze ukwazi ukuhlolisisa kahle.

## 2.6 Ukwabiwa kwesikhathi oHlelweni lweziFundo

UHlelo lweziFundo ULimi LwaseKhaya lusebenzisa amahora ama-4.5 ngesonto, onyakeni wokufunda wamasonto angama-40. Konke okuqukethwe ulimi kufundiswa esikhathini esingamasonto amabili, okungamahora ayisi-9. **Akudingekile ukuthi othisha lokhu bakuthathe njengokuwumnqamulajuqu, kodwa kufanele benze isiqiniseko sokuthi amakhono olimi, ikakhulukazi ukufunda nokubhala, avama ukufundiswa.** Ukwabiwa kwesikhathi sokufundisa amakhono olimi kwehlukene emaBangeni le-10 nele-11 amasonto angama-36. Amasonto ama-4 abekelwe ukuhlola. Isikhathi soLimi lwaseKhaya eBangeni le-12, amasonto angama-30. Amasonto ayi-10 abekelwe ukuhlola.

Isikhathi sokufundisa kumele sibe namaphiriyodi alandelanayo amabili isonto nesonto. Nanka amahora aphakanyiselwe ukufundisa amakhono olimi ehlukene esikhathini esingamasonto amabili:

Amakhono	Ukwabiwa kwesikhathi sokufundisa (ngamahora) emasontweni amabili	%
*Ukulalela nokukhuluma	1	10
*Ukufunda nokubukela: Isifundo sokuqondisisa nesombhalo wobuciko	4	45
*Ukubhala nokwethula	4	45

\*Izakiwo zolimi nokusethenziswa kwazo ziyadidiyelwa zifundiswe kanye nala makhono olimi angenhla.

## 2.7 Izidingo zokufundisa ULimi lwaseKhaya njengesifundo

- Umfundi ngamunye kumele abe nalokhu:
  - Incwadi yolimi evumelekile
  - Incwadi zemibhalo yobuciko ezintathu kulezi ezivumelekile/ezimiselwe ukufundwa:
    - Inoveli/ubuciko bomlomo
    - Umdlalo
    - Izinkondlo
  - Isichazamazwi
  - Izinto zokusakaza eziphathelene nezinto ezibonakalayo: Amaphephandaba namaphephabhuku.

- Uthisha kumele abe nalokhu:
  - (a) IsiTatimende seNqubomgomo yoHlelo lweziFundo nokuHlola
  - (b) INqubomgomo yokuFundisa iziLimi (i-LiEP)
  - (c) Incwadi yolimi esetshenziswa ngabafundi, nezinye Incwadi eziyimithombolwazi ukwelekelela lezo ezimiselwe ukufunda
  - (d) Incwadi ezintathu kulezi ezivumelekile/ezibekelwe ukufundwa:
    - (i) Inoveli/ubuciko bomlomo
    - (ii) Umdlalo
    - (iii) Izinkondlo
  - (e) Izichazamazwi
  - (f) Izinto zokusakaza eziphathelele nezinto ezibonakalayo: Amaphephandaba, amaphephabhuku namabhrosha.

## ISIGABA SESI-3: OKUQUKETHWE KANYE NOHLELO LOKUFUNDISA

Le ngxenye ihlukene izingxenye EZIMBILI, okuqukethwe kwamakhono olimi kanye namasu okufundisa kanye nezinHlelo zokuFundisa.

### 3.1 UKULALELA NOKUKHULUMA

Ukulalela nokukhuluma ngamakhono ahlukene kodwa angakwazi ukuzimele, elinye lincike kwelinye. Womabili la makhono ethulwa ngohlelo olungamiselwe migomo ekilasini, abafundi bathola ulwazi bese beyaluxoxa. Kukhona izinhlobo zokulalela ezimiselwe imigomo, isib. Inkulumo-mpikiswano, isidingo sokuqaphela umyalelo. Ukulalela nokukhuluma okumiselwe imigomo nokungamiselwe migomo kudidiyelwa nokufunda, nokubhala kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi, kanti ukukhuluma kunganika amatheksthi abhaliwe uhlobo lokukhulunywayo (isib. ukufunda uphimisa izinhlamvu)

### UKULALELA

Ukufundisa ukulalela kungamandakanya ukusebenzisa izingxenye zenqubo yokulalela. Lona umsebenzi onezinyathelo ezintathu ezenza amasu okulalela ngokuzimele, ukuhumusha amazwi nokuqonda inkulumo kanye nokunye okulalelwayo. Akuwona wonke AmaBanga enqubo yokulalela azosetshenziswa kuyo yonke imicimbi. Isibonelo, uma abafundi bezolalela incazelo eqoshiwe bazodinga umsebenzi **wangaphambi kokulalela** ozobaqwashisa esidingweni sokulalela ngokucophelela kanye nokukwazi ukuyamanisa lolo lwazi nalolo abanalo empilweni yabo. Imisebenzi **yokulalela** ibasiza ekukhumbuleni imininingwane nokuhlaziya umbiko oqukethwe inkulumo. **Ngemva kokulalela** kungamandakanya abafundi ukuthi baphendule kulokho abakuzwile ngenkathi bexoxa.

### Inqubo yokulalela

#### *Ngaphambi kokulalela*

- Kuhlelwa isimongqondo
- Kwakhiwa intshisekelo yabafundi
- Kuvuselelwa ulwazimagama lwabafundi
- Abafundi baqagela ingqikithi
- Kutholwa ulwazi abafundi abanalo ngesihloko
- Kwakhiwa/kuvuselelwa ulwazi lwaphambilini lwabafundi
- Kumele abafundi bazi ukuthi kulindelekeni kubo
- Kwakhiwa inhloso yokulalela

***Ngesikhathi sokulalela***

Abafundi:

- Bahlaziya
  - o Umyalezo
  - o Lokhu okukhulunywa isikhulumi
- Babheka ubufakazi besikhulumi, ukucabanga kanye nendlela esiveza ngayo imizwa yaso
- Bazakhela isithombe salokho okukhulunywa ngakho emiqondweni
- Bathola incazelo
- Babuza imibuzo
- Bayaqagula baphinde baqinisekise okubikezelwe
- Bayabuyekeza baphinde bahlolisise lokho abakuzwile

***Ngemuva kokulalela***

- Kubuzwa imibuzo Abafundi bakhuluma ngalokhu okwethulwe isikhulumi
- Abafundi baxoxa kafuphi ngobekwethulwa
- Abafundi babuyekeza amanothi
- Abafundi bahlaziya babuy bakuhlolisise lokho abakuzwile
- Abafundi benza imisebenzi ezothuthukisa imicabango edingekayo
- Abafundi bacabangisisa ngobekwethulwa

***Izinhlobo ezehlukene zokulalela******Ukulalela ngenhloso yokuthola ulwazi oluthile***

Emhlabeni wonke jikelele abantu abalalelayo yibona abakwazi ukunikeza izimpendulo eziphusile kunalabo abezwayo nje. Njengoba umhlaba sewaphathwa ubuchwepheshe obuningi obuveza imisindo, umculo kanye nokunye, ukuzinikela ekulaleleni kubaluleke kakhulu. Okuningi okubhalwe ngezansi, okuvela ngamazinga ehlukeni ngokwenqubo yokulalela ebhalwe ngenhla, kakujwayelekile kubafundi abakuleli banga, nothisha kumele basebenzise lokhu ababona ukuthi abafundi babo bakudinga kakhulu.

- Ukuqubula ulwazi lwaphambilini ngaphambi kokulalela
- Ukuqinisekisa inhloso yesikhulumi
- Ukuzinikela ngokugcwele ekulaleleni ukhombise intshisekelo
- Ukuhlwaya incazelo
- Ukubheka ukuqonda kwakho umyalezo ngokuxhumanisa, ngokwenza nokugcizelela ukuqagula, ukwenza



okuqondiswayo, ngokulinganisa kanye nokujejeza emuva

- Ukubhala amanothi abalulekile, uklame, ngokwezigaba, ufingqe, wakhe uhlu lokukhona nokungekho, ukuphinda okushiwoyo ngamagama akho, ukuphinda uxoxe okushiwoyo, ukuchaza.
- Ukuqonda umyalezo wesikhulumi
- Ukuqaphela isimo somqondo kanye nencazelo yamagama
- Ukubona, ukuhlaziya kanye nokuhlolisisa imiyalezo.
- Ukuqonda umyalelo, inkombandlela kanye nendlela yokwenza
- Ukwazi ukubona imibonongqangi kanye nemibono esekelayo
- Ukuqhuba ulwazi ngoku: qhathanisa, hlonipha imiyalelo, gwalisa ezikhaleni, thola umehluko, beka uphawu, dlulisela ulwazi, landelanisa, qhathanisa, hlaziya incazelo
- Ukulandelela kokwethuliwe ngoku: phendula imibuzo, buyekeza amanothi, hlobanisa imibono, fingqa, cacisa, buyekeza, khuluma noma ngokubhala

#### ***Ukulalela ngenhloso yokuhlaziya nokuhlolisisa***

- Yonke le nqubo ebhalwe ngezansi yelekelela ekufundweni kwamatheksthi ayimibhalo, umbhalo wesikhangiso kanye nombhalo wepolitiki. Ngemuva komsebenzi wokulalela, othisha kumele banikeze abafundi ithuba lokuxoxisana bebodwa, kanti kuba kule ukuthi lokhu obekuxoxwa kugcine sekubhalwa phansi. Isibonelo, kucashunwa ingxenye ethile kumabonakude engasetshenziswa ukuqala indaba elandisayo. Kungasetshenziswa amagama achukuluza imizwa enkulumweni noma okucashunwe enkondlweni okungasetshenziswa ukubhala umbhalo. Ungasebenzisa amagama owathole enkondlweni ukuze ukwazi ukuwaqondisisa kahle.
- Ukukhomba ubuye uhlaziye ulimi oluthinta imizwa isib. olukhombisa intukuthelo, ukujabula oluchemile, olucwasayo noluveza inkolelo engaguquki.
- Ukuveza umehluko phakathi kweqiniso nombono.
- Ukukhombisa ukuqaphela kanye nokuhumusha iphimbo, isivini kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi.
- Ukuphendula ubhekise esitayeleni, iphimbo nerejista kanye nokuhlolisisa kahle
- Ukuqonda ukuhleleka kahle kolwazi.
- Ukuthatha izinqumo kanye nokunikeza ubufakazi.
- Ukuqagula kanye nokucabangela imiphumela.
- Ukuphendula ekusetshenzisweni kolimi, ukukhethwa kwamagama, isakhiwo kanye nokuphinyiswa kwamagama.

***Ukulalela ukuze uncome futhi uxhumane nabanye***

Lo msebenzi wokulalela usetshenziswa kakhulu uma kunenkulumompikiswano, kunokuxoxa kwamaqembu kanye nezinye izakhiwo noma izimiso zokuxoxisana. Ukubukela izingxenywe ezithile zamafilimu kungasiza ekuhlaziyeni izimpawu ezithile ngokohlu olulandelayo:

- Ukuphendula ezimweni zokukhulumisana.
- Ukunikezelana amathuba lapho kuxoxwa.
- Ukubuza imibuzo ukuze indaba iqhubekale phambili.
- Ukuphendula uqaphela ukunyakaza komzimba, ukukhuluma ngamehlo/ngomzimba.
- Ukukhombisa ukuqonda ubudlelwano phakathi kolimi kanye nesiko ngokukhombisa inhlonipho yokugcinwa kwamasiko.
- Ukukwazi ukubona ubuhle kanye nekhwalithi yamatheksthi akhulunywayo, isib. Isigqi, isivinini, umthelela womsindo, imifanekisomqondo, ukusebenzisa izitho zomzimba ezithile kuhambisana netheksthi

**UKUKHULUMA**

Uma abafundi bengaqeda leli banga lemfundo yabo sebekwazi ukukhuluma kalula, belunge kahle, bangabe bazuze okubaluleke kakhulu ezimpilweni zabo, nasezindaweni zemisebenzi. Ukwakha ukuzethemba ekukhulumeni kungabavulela amasango amaningi ikakhulukazi uma bezokhuluma phambi kwabantu. Abafundi kumele bazi ukuthi uma sebekhuluma abazukuba inhlekisa, futhi kumele bathole ukwelekeleleka nokugququzeleka kuthisha obafundisayo ngaso sonke isikhathi.

Abafundi sebefundisiwe amasu amaningi okwethula inkulumo enohlonze ngaphambi kokuba bafike kuleli banga. Kumele kufundiswe abafundi okumele bakufunde.

Ukufundisa ukukhuluma kumele kumbandakanye ulwazi lwenqubo yokukhuluma kanye namasu okukhuluma.

**Inqubo kanye namasu okukhuluma**

Inqubo yokukhuluma inalezi zinyathelo ezilandelayo:

- Ukulungiselela, ukucwaninga kanye nokuhlela.
- Ukuzilolonga nokwethula inkulumo.

***Ukulungiselela, ukucwaninga kanye nokuhlela***

Abafundi kumele bakwazi ukukhombisa ukuhlela, namakhono okucwaninga okuzothulwa ngomlomo ngoku:

- Sebenzisa irejista nesitayela, nephimbo (imibono/imizwa) ukuze kuhambelane nenhloso, nezethameli nesimo.
- Sebenzisa amagama anembayo.
- Bonisa ikhono lokuhlolisisa indlela ulimi olusetshenziswa ngayo ukwethula amaqiniso nokuveza umbono nokuveza incazelo eqondile kanye negudliselayo kanye nokuveza incazelo esobala necashile.

- Ethula abuye akhombise amagugu nendlela abuka ngayo izinto, ukuchema, ukucwasa, ulimi oluthinta imizwa, ulimi oluncengayo kanye nolimi olukhohlisayo
- Sebenzisa izinsizalwazi nemibhalo equkethe ulwazi efana nezichazamazwi nethesorasi ukukhetha ulwazimagama olunembayo, bethule inkulumo besebenzisa amanothi namaprophu/izinsika, izinsiza ezibonakalayo nezilalelwayo, amagrafu ukukwazi ukucacisa lokho okwethulwayo.

### ***Ukuzilolonga nokwethula inkulumo***

Abafundi kumele bakwazi ukukhombisa amakhono okwethula ngomlomo ngoku:

- Khuluma bebhokise ngqo ezethamelini
- Bhekisa emithonjeni ehlukeni ngokubanzi efanele ethintiwe, kumbandakanya amaqiniso ehlukeni nezibonelo ngokwezidingo zomsebenzi owenziwayo.
- Sebenzisa isingeniso kanye nesiphetho esinembayo; ukuveza imibono nokwesekela ngendlela ecacile, iphinde ibonisa ibonise ukulandelana kahle kwemibono kanye nokugwema ukunhlahlatha, ukuphindaphinda okungenasidingo, ukusebenzisa amagama kakhulu angcine eselahlala incazelo kanye nokusebenzisa izakhiwo zokuhlela izindaba ezifana nokulandelanisa ngokomlando nesikhathi, ukusebenzisa izindaba ezisematheni, imbangela nomphumela, ukuqhathanisa nokwehlukana, ukubheka inkinga nesixazululo, ukunikeza ulwazi kanye nokuncenga.
- Sebenzisa izwi ngendlela efanele.
- Kwethula nokubeka phambili imibono yakhe ngokucacile kanye nokukhetha ubufakazi okuyibo (isib. ngokusebenzisa izinombolo, ubufakazi, izimo ezithile) ukubeka ubufakazi ezingeni elifanele, kunikeza ukuqinisekisa, ukukholakala kanye nokuqondana.
- Sebenzisa izindlela ezifanele zokwethula kubantu noma ukuphindaphinda: isib. bakwethu, muzi wakwethu, mphakathi wakwethu, ngifuna ukugcizelela lokhu.
- Sebenzisa ukukhethwa kwamagama okufanele, izakhiwo nezimiso nokusetshenziswa kolimi.
- Sebenzisa amaqhinga okwethulwa ngomlomo nokusebenzisa umzimba ekukhulumeni. (isib. iphimbo, ukukhishwa kwezwi/ukwenyuka nokwehla, ivolumu, isivinini, ukubeka amagama ngendlela ethile, ukubheka ngqo izethameli, ukukhombisa okushoyo ngobuso, njalonzalo) lapho kwethulwa.

### **Izimpawu nezimiso zamatheksthi okuxhumana ngokukhuluma**

#### ***Inkulumo elungiselelwe***

Lonke uhlu olutholakala kokwethulwayo luyasebenza nalapha enkulumeni elungiselelwe

#### ***Inkulumo engalungiselelwe***

- Kusetshenziswa iphimbo, izwi, isivinini, ukubheka ngqo izethameli, indlela kanye nezingxenywe ezithile zomzimba.
- Kusetshenziswa ulwazimagama nezakhiwo zolimi ezinembayo.
- Kusetshenziswa isingeniso esinembayo nesiphetho ngokunjalo.

**Inhlolokhono/i-inthavyu**

- Kuyabuzwa, kunxenxwe, kubhalwe amanothi, kufingqwe, kusetshenziswe amakhono okulalela kanye namakhono okukhuluma ngomzimba kahle.
- Kuyahlelwa kuphinde kwenziwe amalungiselelo: kubhekwa inhloso, ulwazi lwaphambilini, kubekwa ngamafuphi, kubuzwa imibuzo, kuqashelwa isikhathi nendawo, kuqashelwa ukulandelana kwamaphuzu, indawo (Bheka izimpawu zokubhala)
- Kusetshenziswa amasu enhloloikhono:
  - o Isingeniso (ukuzichaza nokwethula inhloso)
  - o Kwakhiwa umoya wokwethembana
  - o Kuqalwa ngokubuzwa imibuzo eyejwayelekile kuze imibuzo eqondene ngqo nokuthile, kubuzwa imibuzo efanele, kusetshenziswa ulimi olufanele nolunxenxayo, kulalelwa ngokucophelela, kuhlaziywa izimpendulo, kuphendulwa kahle ukukhombisa ulwazi oluthile
  - o Kuqoshwa phansi izimpendulo ngokubhala amanothi, ngokufingqa, ngokulandelana kahle izimpendulo kanye neminingwane ngokulandelana kwayo.
  - o Ukuphetha (Kubongwa labo abebambame iqhaza bese kunikezwana iminingwane yokuxhumana).

**Ukwethula isikhulumi**

- Kwethulwa isikhulumi sosuku ngokuveza iminingwane ephelele neqondile.
- Uyazilungiselela, ahlele ngaphambi kokwethula:
  - o Usebenzisa ulimi oluvumelekile ukwamukela nokwethula isikhulumi sosuku. Kubalulekile ukuthi angafaki amancoko angenasidingo.
  - o Wenza ucwaningo ukuze athole ulwazi oluqondile ngesikhulumi sosuku kanye nolimi abazolusebenzisa.
  - o Uthola esikhulumini sosuku ukuthi yikuphi esizothanda kusetshenziswe ohlwini lokuchazwa kwaso okuvela ku-CV yaso.
  - o Unikeza ulwazi kafushane ngomlando wesikhulumi sosuku.
  - o Unikeza ulwazi kafushane ngamazinga emfundo, umlando ngezindawo asesebenze kuzo.
  - o Ubalula umsebenzana wesikhulumi wokuzilibazisa nesikukhonzile uma kuhambisana nesimo
  - o Uveza osekwazuzwa isikhulumi sosuku okusezingeni eliphezulu.
  - o Uxhumanisa ukwethulwa kwesikhulumi kanye nengqikithi yenkulumo, isib. akuvele ukuthi kungani ukuba isikhulumi sosuku simenyiwe ukuzothula inkulumo.
  - o Umemezela igama lesikhulumi sosuku ngasekugcineni futhi wenza isiqiniseko sokuthi uliphimisa kahle.
  - o Ukwethulwa kwesikhulumi sosuku akube kufishane: izethameli zizele ukuzolalela isikhulumi sosuku, azizile ukuzolalela owethula isikhulumi.

***Ukwedlulisa amazwi okubonga***

Kwedluliswa amazwi okubonga isikhulumi sosuku ngemuva kokwethula inkulumo ezethamelini.

- Ozokwedlulisa amazwi okubonga uyazilungiselela, ahlele ngaphambi kokubonga.
- Ulalelisisa inkulumo yesikhulumi ukuze aveze amaphuzu athile ambalwa isikhulumi esiwethulile.
- Uqopha amaphuzu asemqoka ethulwa yisikhulumi; isib. Ubonga isikhulumi ngokuveza okuthile abalaleli abebengakwazi.
- Wedlulisa amazwi okubonga anembayo ngamafuphi.

***Ukuxoxa kwesigungu***

- Yilesi nalesi sikhulumi sikhuluma ngokuthile ngesihloko.
- Kusetshenziswa imishwana kulandelwa izimiso zolimi.
- Umsebenzi kaSihlalo:
  - o Ukuqondisa umhlangano.
  - o Ukugcina isikhathi kungankantwa.
  - o Ukubhekelela ukuthi kulandelwa i-ajenda/ohlelweni lomhlangano.
  - o Ukugqogqezela ukuthi bonke abantu babe yingxenye yomhlangano.
  - o Ukungachemi/angathathi hlangothi.
  - o Ukuveza ithuba lokwethulwa kweziphakamiso noma ukuvota.

***Ukuxoxisana okungabekelwe migomo***

- Qalisa ingxoxo futhi uyenze iqhubeka.
- Sebenzisa imigomo yokunikezelana amathuba kwabakhulumayo.
- Vikela umbono wakho.
- Xoxisana ukuze kuvunyelwane.
- Vala izikhala kanye nokugqogqezela isikhulumi.
- Abelana ngemibono nolwazi kanye nokutshengisa ukuqonda umbono.

***Inkulumo-mpikiswano***

- **Isinqumo:** isitatimende amaqembu amabili azoqophisana ngaso. Isib. Ukuphucwa kwezikhali yisona sixazululo esingaletha ukuthula noxolo emhlabeni.
- **Ukuphika:** ukuchaza ukuthi kungani leli elinye iqembu lingahambisani nelineye.

- **Isikhulumi esisohlangothini oluvumelana nesihloko:** siyavumelana nesiqumo noma nesiphakamiso. Iqembu elivumelana nesihloko lihlale linomthwalo wokuveza ubufakazi kanye nokuqala nokuphetha inkulumo-mpendulwano.
- **Isikhulumi esisohlangothini oluphikisayo:** siphikisana nesiqumo ngokuthi sibeke amaphuzu asekela ukuphikisana kwaso nalesi sinqumo noma umbono kanye nokuveza ukwesekela kwaso lokhu esikushoyo.

### ***Inqubo yenkulumo-mpikiswano***

- Isihloko kanye nezizathu zokwesekela imibono zokuqala zethulwa yisikhulumi sokuqala sasohlangothini oluhambisana nesihloko.
- Izizathu zokwesekela imibono zethulwa yisikhulumi sokuqala ngasohlangothini oluphikisayo.
- Isikhulumi sesibili ngasohlangothini oluhambisana nesihloko siveza izizathu zokwesekela imibono yeqembu kanye laso.
- Isikhulumi sesibili ngasohlangothini oluphikisana nesihloko siveza izizathu zokwesekela imibono yeqembu laso.
- Womabili amaqembu anikezwa imizuzu yokuphumula emi-5 kuya kweyi-10 ukulungiselela ukuphikisana. Yilelo nalelo qembu linelungelo lokuphikisa nezizathu zokwesekela imibono eyethulwe elinye iqembu kanye nokuqinisa owalo umbono ngesihloko.
- Iqembu eliphikisayo lethula amaphuzu amabili okuphikisa izizathu zaleli elinye iqembu kanye nezesekele imibono yeqembu elivumayo bese liveza nezizathu.
- Iqembu elihambisana nesihloko lethula amaphuzu amabili okuphikisa izizathu nezesekele imibono yeqembu eliphikisayo bese liveza nezizathu.

### **Ubude bamatheksthi angasetshenziswa esifundweni solulalela ngokuqondisa**

Amatheksthi	AmaBanga	Inani lamagama
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Ama-oral, okubukwayo-okulalelwa kubukelwe, amatheksthi anhlobonhlobo njengephephabhuku, izindatshana, amaphephandaba, amakhathuni nezikhangiso.</li><li>Izichazamazwi nethesorasi.</li><li>Amatheksthi alalelwayo (ukulalelela ukuqondisisa: amazwibela angamaminithi amabili eBangeni le-10 nele-11 kube amaminithi amathathu eBangeni le-12). Itheksthi mayifundwe okungenani kabili ngaphambi kokuba kuhlolwe.</li><li>Ibhuku lezinombolo zocingo nebhuku lezinhlalo ze-TV.</li><li>Amatheksthi okuziqambela (ama-eseyi nezindatshana ezedlulisa imiyalezo).</li><li>Amatheksthi apethe ulwazi oluthile.</li><li>Amatheksthi okwengeza ulwazi.</li><li>Amatheksthi abukelwa-alalelwe (amafilimi, umabonakude, izithombe ezelamaniswayo, okuqoshiwe, izinhlelo zomsakazo, izithombe namavidiyo omculo.</li></ul>	IBanga le-10	Amagama angama-150
	IBanga le-11	Amagama angama-250
	IBanga le-12	Amagama angama-350
<b>NOMA</b> isivivinyo semizuzu engama-30 (sekuhlangene nemizuzu emi-2 yetheksthi elalelwayo (yeBanga le-10 nele-11), nesemizuzu emi-3 [yeBanga le-12] kanye nokuphendula imibuzo).		

**Iziphakamiso zobude besikhathi samatheksthi obuhlelelwa ama-orali**

<b>Amatheksthi</b>	<b>Ubude besikhathi (Banga le- 10 kuya kwele-12)</b>
Izingxoxo, izinkulumo-mpendulwano, imikhandlu/amaqembu/izigungu.	Imizuzu engama-20 kuya kwengama-30
Izinkulumo-mpendulwano.	Imizuzu eyi-6 kuya kweyisi-8
Izinkombandlela nemiyalelo.	Imizuzu emi-4 kuya kwemi-5
Inhlolokhono/i-inthavyu	Imizuzu eyi-10 kuya kweyi-15
Ukwethula isikhulumi, amazwi okubonga.	Imizuzu emi-4 kuya kwemi-5
Inkulumo elungiselelwe nengalungiselelwe, umbiko, noku-bukezwa kwemibhalo.	Imizuzu emi-4 kuya kwemi-5
Inkulumo engalungiselelwe	Imizuzu emi-2 kuya kwemi-3
Ukuxoxwa kwendaba.	Imizuzu eyi-8 kuya kweyi-10
Umhlangano nenqubo yomhlangano	Imizuzu eyi-10 kuya kweyi-15



### 3.2 UKUFUNDA NOKUBUKELA

Le ngxenye ikhuluma ngokufunda nokubukela kanye namasu asetshenziswa ukuqondisisa nokuncoma amatheksthi emibhalo yobuciko kanye nalawo amatheksthi angewona imibhalo yobuciko.

#### Inqubo Yokufunda

Ukufundisa amakhona okufunda kugambandakanya amazinga amathathu ukuze kuqondwe itheksthi. Lokho akusho ukuthi sekumele kulandelwe njalo wonke amazinga. Isibonelo, uma abafundi befunda itheksthi engejwayelekile, bazodinga ukwedlula ezingeni lokuqala (**ngaphambi kokufunda**), abalungiselele ukuqonda izimpawu zohlobo lwetheksthi, kubuye kubasize ukuqhathanisa ulwazi lwetheksthi nolwazi abanalo abaluzuze empilweni. **Ukufunda (ngesikhathi sokufunda)** kuzobasiza ukuqonda ukuhlaziya izimo zokusetshenziswa kulimi ngokubanzi. **Ngemuva kokufunda** kungasiza abafundi ukuzama ukuphinda babhale itheksthi yobuciko ngokwabo.

**Ngaphambi kokufunda:** Lokhu ngukwethula nokujwayeza abafundi itheksthi. Kuvuselela ulwazi oluhambisanayo kanye nolwaphambilini.

- Ukufunda ngokushesha ukha phezulu nangokucophelela amaphuzu abalulekile ezimpawini zetheksthi njengalezi: igama lencwadi, izahluko, izihlokwana, imibhalo echazayo nezithombe, amagrafu, ifonti, ukubhalwa kwezimbongo, ukuhleleka kombhalo, imidwebo, amabalazwe amabhokisana aveza izihlokwana ekhompuyutheni, njalonjalo.
- Ukufunda ngokushesha ukha phezulu nangokucophelela amaphuzu abalulekile ezingxenyeni zombhalo njengalezi: ikhasi elinesihloko, uhlu lokuqokethwe, izahluko, izincazelo zamagama, izengezelelo, amanothi asezansi nekhasi, achaza okuthile, njll.
- Ukubikezela usebenzisa ulwazi olutholakale ngenkathi kufundwa ngokushesha ukha phezulu nangokucophelela amaphuzu abalulekile
- Ukuxoxa ngolwazimagama olungejwayelekile kubafundi.

**Ngesikhathi sokufunda:** kuhambisana nokuhumusha umbhalo nokubukisisa izimpawu zawo zolimi:

- Kutholwa ukuthi itheksthi ikhuluma ngani.
- Kubhekwa izincazelo zamagama angejwayelekile kanye nemifanekisomqondo kusetshenziswa isu lokufunisela incazelo yegama ngokuhlola amalunga amagama.
- Kusetshenziswa amasu okufunda ngokuqondisisa: ukuzama ukuhlanganisa nokuqaphela umqondo wesiqephu, ukuguquguquka isivini sokufunda kulandelwa ubunjalo bethheksthi, ukuphinda kufundwe uma kunesidingo, ukufuna ulwazi oluthile olungasiza ekuqondeni itheksthi, ukubuza nokuphendula imibuzo (kusukela emibuzweni elula kuya kwelukhuni), ukubona ngeso lengqondo, ukufunisela, ukufunda ukuze uthole amaphuzu asemqoka, ukubheka ukukhethwa kwamagama nezakhiwo zolimi, ukubona uhlobo lwetheksthi usizwa yindlela ehlelwe ngayo, kanye nezimpawu zolimi.
- Ukubhala amanothi noma ukufingqa imibonongqangi kanye nesekeleyo.

**Ngemuva kokufunda:** Lokho kwenza abafundi babone babuye baphawule ngayo yonke itheksthi.

- Bakwazi ukuphendula imibuzo ngetheksthi.

- Bakwazi ukuhlaziya ngokuqhathanisa.
- Bakwazi ukuhlolisisa, ukunquma nokubeka imibono yabo.
- Bakwazi ukukhiqiza uhlobo oluthile lombhalo ngokwabo (uma kudingekile).
- Bakwazi indlela ulimi olusetshenziswa ngayo.
  - o Iqiniso kanye nombono.
  - o Incazelo eqondile kanye negudliselayo.
  - o Umqondo osobala kanye nojulile.
  - o Baqonde okuphathelene nezenhlalo nombusazwe kanye namasiko ababhali.
  - o Umthelela wokufakwa kanye nokweqiwa kwamagama encazelweni.
  - o Ubudlelwano phakathi kolimi kanye nesikhundla somuntu ophethe.
  - o Ulimi oluchukuluza/oluvusa/oluthintha imizwa, oluvumisayo, uoluchemile, olubandlululayo, olucwasayo, olunenkolelo engaguquki, izindlela ezechukene zokusebenzisa ulimi, isib. Ulimi lwesigodi, ijagoni, ukucabangela okungahle kwenzeke, ukuqagula, indlela yokucabanga inhloso yokufaka noma yokukhipha ulwazi oluthile.

## **Ukukhunyushwa kwamatheksthi abonwayo (amatheksthi anhlolobonhlobo asamdwebo nabonwayo)**

Kubafundi abaningi, ulwazi olunzulu baluthola ezikrinini (umabonakude, amakhomuppyutha, namafilemu) kunasemibhalweni efundwayo equkethe imidwebo. Izinto ezibukelwayo ziyingxenywe esemqoka yokufunda kanti namakhomuppyutha alekelela kakhulu ukuhlunga okubalulekile okuzosetshenziswa. Hlola ukuthi izimiso zibaluleke kangakanani kumawebhusayithi adumile nokuthi bakuthola kanjani ukunakwa laba abakhangisayo; nokuthi ukusetshenziswa kokunyakaza kanye nemibala kubamba iqhaza elikhulu ekunxenxeni umfundi oseyisebenzisile ukuthi adlulele kwamanye amawebhusayithi.

- Amasu okunxena: ulimi oluvusa/oluthitha/oluchukuluza imizwa oluchemile, oluvumisayo
- Ukubona ukuthi ulimi kanye nemifanekisomqondo kunamthelela muni kumagugu nezimo abheka ngazo izinto, ulimi kanye nemifanekisomqondo ecwasa ngokobulili, ngokobuhlanga, ngokobudala noma okuncike ekugcizeleleni inkolo engaguquki, ikakhulukazi ezikhangisweni.
- Ukubona umthelela wokusebenzisa ifonti nobungako bamagama, izihloko namakhephshini.
- Ukuhlaziya, ahumusha ahlolisise, kanye nokuphendula ebhekise kumakhathuni/kumwebomahlaya.

## **Ukuthuthukiswa kolwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi**

Ulwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi kumele abafundi baqaliswe lona ngenkathi sebethulelwa amatheksthi angempela, ezinkondlweni nakumaphrozi, emibhalweni, indaba eqanjiwe nengaqanjwanga. Isibonelo, uma sisebenzisa izimo zokukhuluma, kubalulekile ukuthi kugxilwe ekutheni kungani lezo zimo zokukhuluma zisetshenzisiwe kunokuzigagula. Kuye kube kuhle ukuzibuza umbuzo ofana nalo, 'Kungani umbhali esebenzise upholavuthondaba lapha?' kunokubuza ukuthi 'Yisiphi isimo sokukhuluma esitholakala lapha?'

Kumele kugxilwe kulokhu:

- Ulimi olunencazelo ecashile kanye namasu obuciko bokukhuluma: izaga, izisho, izifenko (isifaniso, isingathekiso, ukwenzasamuntu, ukwenzasasilwane, ihaba, ukubhinqa, indida, i-okzimoroni, anakhronizimu, uvuthondaba, upholavuthondaba, umbizi, ifuzamsindo, ukuhlanekizela). Nakuba ulwazi lwalezi zimo zokukhuluma lubalulekile, kumele lwethulwe kubafundi njengokuvela kwazo emibhalweni yephrozi, yezinkondlo, emibhalweni yokuziqambela engakholakali kanye neyethula amaqiniso.
- Ukuveza umehluko okhona phakathi kwencazelo esobala necashile.
- Ukusebenzisa izichazamazwi kanye nethesorasi ngempumelelo kanye nezinye Incwadi ongacobeleva kuzo incazelo, isipelingi, impimiso, amalunga kanye nezingcezu zenkulumo kanye namagama angejwayelekile.
- Ukubona incazelo yeziqalo ezisetshenzisiwe kanye nezijobelelo.
- Ukubona incazelo yamagama kanye nobudlelwano bawo namanye amagama ahambelana nawo ngokusebenzisa imisuka, iziqalo nezijobelelo
- Ukusebenzisa isimo esitholakala embhalweni, (isib. ezincazelweni zemisho), izimpawu zokuloba (isib. amakhoma, abacaphuni) isibonelo sombiko ogqamile ukuthola incazelo yamagama angejwayelekile.
- Ukwehlukanisa phakathi kwamagama anemiqondo eminingi (ipholisemi) nokuwasebenzisa ngendlela eyemukelekile ematheksthini.
- Ukukwazi ukubona inkulumbo eqhathanisa izehlakalo ezedlule, umlando, ezenkolo, imibhalo yobuciko kanye nabantu abaziwayo (isib. usebenza kwamalume, okuchaza ukusebenza kahle; ukubhekwa yisambane, okuchaza ukuba sebhadini ngaleso sikhathi)
- Ukukhombisa ukuqonda izaga nezisho nokusetshenziswa kwazo.
- Ukuhlolisisa ukuthi amagama asuselwa kwamanye amasiko/ayimifakela anamthelela muni ematheksthini. isib. amagama asuselwa kwezinye izilimi, isitsotsi, ulimi lwesigodi, amagama agqamisa ubuzwe
- Ukwehlukanisa phakathi kwamagama adidayo, ophimbohluka, amabizwafane, njll.
- Ukuphinda uxoxe indaba usebenzisa amanye amagama ehlukele.
- Ukusebenzisa igama elilodwa elimele ibinzana.
- Ukusebenzisa amagama ahambisanayo (isib. Amathe nolimi,inja nehati).

### **Izakhiwo zemisho kanye nokuhleleka kwamatheksthi.**

Izinto eziningi ezibhalwe lapha kumele ngabe sezifundiwe emabangeni adlule. Ukufundisa amaphethini nezakhiwo kusebenza kangcono esifundweni semibhalo lapho abafundi bezoba nethuba lokuwasebenzisa ukuze babone amandla awo ngqo, kunokuba bakutomule ematheksthini omunye umuntu.

- Ukubona, anikeze ahlaziye incazelo nezakhiwo kanye nezimiso nokusetshenziswa kolimi ematheksthini:
  - o Amagama ahlanganisa imibono/izihlanganiso: okokuqala, okwesibili, sengiphetha, njll.
  - o Izifinyezo ezahlukehlukene kanye nama-akhronimi

- o Izenzo kanye nezingazenzo ukuveza inkathi kanye nesimo ngendlela eqondile.
- o Inkulumo eyethulwa umenzi eyinhloko yomusho kanye nomusho umenziwa eyinhloko yomusho.
- o Inkulumo ngqo kanye nenkulumo ewumbiko.
- o Izivumelwano, izakhi zesibanjalo, isakhi u-'ku'.
- o Ukulandelana kwamagama emishweni ngendlela eqondile.
- o Izimpawu zokuloba.
- Hlaziya isakhiwo/ukuhleleka kwamatheksthi asetshenziswa oHlelweni lweziFundo lonke kanye namagama adlulisa umyalezo/amagama abonisa okuthile: itheksthi ekhomba ukulandelana, ukuchaza, imbangela kanye nomthelela, inqubo okwenzeka ngayo izinto, ukuqhathanisa/ukwehlukanisa, ukulandelana ngokubaluleka, amapharagrafu abonisa ukukhetha amapharagrafu abonisa ukukhetha, isigaba esichazayo, isigaba esihlaziyo, isigaba esethulayo, imibiko, isigaba esisongayo/esiphethayo.

### **Izimpawu zamatheksthi ayimibhalo yobuciko**

Ababhali basebenzisa amatheksthi ukwedlulisa imicabango yabo. Ababhali abanohlonze bayabuqaphela ubuqili kanye nokuningi okuthinta ulimi lwesiZulu, noma ngabe kuncane kangakanani. Nakuba kubalulekile ukuthi izimpawu zemibhalo nokwakhiwa, kanye nomthelela kuyafundwa, okubaluleke kakhulu ukuqonda umthelela wezimpawu emibikweni kanye nombiko ohloswe ukudluliswa wumbhali.

### **Izinkondlo**

Mibili imibuzo okumele umfundi azibuze yona ngokwenkondlo. Owokuqala: Kuthiwani? Ngizokwazi kanjani? Umbuzo wesibili wengeza empendulweni yombuzo wokuqala; umbuzo wokuqala uholela kokuzovezwa umbuzo wesibili. Bonke ababhali babhala ngoba kukhona abafunda ukukwedlulisa – babhala ngezinto ezithokozisayo, ikakhulukazi okubalulekile emphakathini abawubhalelayo. Sifunda amatheksthi ukwelekelela, ukufakazela, ukucacisa kanye nokuveza okushiwo ababhali kithina. Lo msebenzi ubheka ukusetshenziswa kolimi olunothile; ukusetshenziswa kwemigqa, amabinza, kanye nenkondlo iyonke, ukukhethwa kwemifanekiso-mqondo, isigqi, umoya oledlwa yimifanekiso-mqondo. Konke lokhu kuyimizamo yokuthola isiphetho sesikhashana okuzoya sigcine sithole umqondo oqokethwe wumbhalo. Akuvamisile ukuba khona komkhawulo ekufundweni kwenkondlo enhle.

Lezi zingxenye ezibhalwe ngezansi zizokwelekelela ekuqondeni:

- Umqondo osobala.
- Umqondo ocashile.
- Umoya wenkondlo.
- Indikimba kanye nomyalezo.
- Imifanekisomqondo.
- Izifengqo, ukukhethwa kwamagama, ithoni, amasu obuciko, umoya wembongi, imigqa, amagama, amabinza, ukuxhumana, izimpawu zokuloba, impindwa, ukuphindaphinda, amasu okusebenzisa umsindo (ifanamsindo, isigqi, impindwa, invumelwano nefuzamsindo) kanye ne-enjambamenti.

**Umdlalo**

Emdlalweni akusetshenziswa kuphela amagama kanye nolimi: kafakwa ukunyakaza, izwi, ukukhanya kanye nobumnyama, okwenzeka phakathi kwabadlali kanye nokudlala eshashalazini. Okubalulekile indlela umdlalo ohamba ngayo; indlela abadlali abadlala ngayo; yikuphi abakwenza buthule; ukushintshashintsha kobuso kungashintsha umqondo odluliswayo – konke lokhu kungalahleka uma bedlala sengathi kufundwa inoveli.

Akukuhle ukuthi kudlalwe ividiyo yomdlalo ngaphambi kokuba umdlalo ufundwe abafundi. Ngaphandle kwalokho ividiyo iba umdlalo uqobo, akukho okungachezula ukuhunyushwa kwalowo mkhiqizo.

Ukuzakhela isithombe engqondweni, indlela abadlali ababukeka ngayo kanye nokuhlola ukuthi umugqa noma inkulumbo kungashiwo kanjani, yizinto ezibalulekile ekufundweni komdlalo ekilasini. Isakhiwo nesakhiwana: indlela abadlali abevezwe ngayo, ukuthi bakhula kanjani nomdlalo; isizinda, ulwazi lwaphambilini (uma kunesidingo esibalulekile ukwelekelela ukuqonda kabanzi umdlalo), isivinini, ukusetshenziswa kwemifanekiso-mqondo; amasu omdlalo, njengenkulumbo kayedwana, okwenzeka enkundleni, isigameko esifihlelwe umlingiswa othile, udweshu, isenamisi noma imbangelusizi konke kubalulekile uma kufundwa umdlalo.

Lokhu okulandelayo kungelekelela abafundi ekuqondeni kabanzi amatheksthi:

- Isakhiwo kanye nesakhiwana (isethulo, isixakaxaka, ukubhebhetheka kodweshu, uvuthondaba, upholavuthondaba, isiphetho, ukujejeza emuva, ukubikezela ukuvezwa kwabalingiswa).
- Umsebenzi womlandi/umlingiswa/umbono womlandi.
- Indikimba kanye nomyalezo.
- Ulwazi lwaphambilini kanye nesizinda – ubudlelwano babadlali nendikimba.
- Umumo wondlalo: isakhiwo, isakhiwana (isethulo, ukubhebhetheka kodweshu novuthondaba).
- Umoya nethoni.
- Ingwijikhwebu/isiphetho.
- Imiyalezo yokuzokwenzeka enkundleni yokudlalela.
- Ukuxhumana phakathi kwenkulumbo-mpendulwano/inkulumbo kayedwana nesenzeko.
- Isigameko esifihlelwe umlingiswa othile.
- Ukulandelana kwezigameko.

**Inovel/ubuciko bomlomo lizinganekwane:** Inganeko, umzekeliso, inganekozilwane, insumo kanye nensumansumane.

*Izindaba ezimfushane zifundelwa ukuthuthukisa ulwazi kuphela*

Amanoveli kanye neminye imibhalo yephrozi ebhalelwe ukufundwa, futhi kukhulunywe ngawo kanye nokuzithokozisa. Kubaluleke kakhulu ukufunda amatheksthi ngokuphimisela emakilasini, ikakhulukazi kubafundi abangakuthandisisi kahle ukufunda, noma kulabo abanezingqinamba ekufundeni. Funda ngokusheshelela, ukwenzela ukugqugquzela intshisekelo yokufunda usebenzisa izindlela zokufunda ezisobala, ukucabangela, ukuqagula ukuhlolisisa kanye

nokuncoma. Ukuxoxa sakucabangela ngenoveli kungenza kube nelukuluku lokulangazelela ukufunda kabanzi, ukuthola abadlali ababalulekile, ukusetshenziswa kwamagama kanye nemifanekiso-mqondo ukugcizelela indikimba yenoveli. Lokhu kungenza abafundi babe nogqozi lokufunda imibhalo.

Ngemuva kokufunda kokuqala, abafundi kumele bawazi umehluko phakathi kokulandisa (kuzokwenzekani ngokuzayo?) kanye nesakhiwo (kudalwe yini?); veza okungaba umqondo wendaba kanye nokuhunyushwa kwendaba; uchaze ukuthi umbhali ulusebenzise kanjani ulimi ukuveza abalingiswa (ukuchaza abalingiswa nenkulumompendulwano); indlela abadlali abadlala ngayo; isizinda (ulimi oluchazayo, kanye nezigameko ezitholakala enovelini yonke), uxazulule imibono ethile lapho kudingeka khona, nokuveza izinkomba lapho inoveli iya khona. Abantu abaningi kanye namasiko baphila impilo efaka izindaba phakathi. Nanoma yikuphi okwenziwa uthisha ekilasini, kumele kungabugudluzi ubumnandi bokufunda izindaba.

Lokhu okulandelayo kungelekelela abafundi ekuqondeni kabanzi amatheksthi:

- Isakhiwo kanye nesakhiwana (isethulo, udweshu, ukubhebhethaka kodweshu, uvuthondaba, ipholavuthondaba, isiphetho, ukujejeza emuva nokubikezela)
- Ukuvezwa kwabalingiswa.
- Umsebenzi womlandi.
- Imiyalezo kanye nendikimba.
- Ulwazi lwaphambilini kanye nesizinda - ubudlelwane nabadlali nedikimba.
- Okwenzeka endabeni, isizinda kanye neqhaza labalingiswa ekuthuthukiseni indikimba.
- Umoya nengwijikwebu.
- Ukulandelana kwezigameko

Ukwengeza kulokhu okubalulwe ngenhla, lokhu okulandelayo **kobuciko bomlomo** kumele kufundwe:

- **Izinkondlo zomdabu:** (Imilolozelo, inkulumo-mpendulwano, umculo noma imisindo yezinyoni (imilozi), izibongo zezilwane nokunye, izithakazelo, izihasho, izibongo zamakhosi nabantu abadumile, iziqubulo, izangelo, izigiyo, imibholoho, umculo womasikandi, isicathamiya, amahubo esizwe, empi, emindeni, njalonjalo).
- **Iziphicaphicwano:** Ezimfushane, ezinde kanye neziyinkinga/eziyindida.
- **Izimo zokukhuluma:** Izaga nezisho.

### ***Ukufundwa kwefilimu (ifundelwa ukuthuthukisa ulwazi)***

Ukufundwa kwefilimu akufani nokufundisa inoveli. Nakuba ukufundwa kwefilimu kufundiswa ngendlela efanayo nomdlalo kanye nenoveli, igama elithi 'amasu obubhayisikobho' lidinga ukuqasheliswa kakhulu. 'Ukufunda' ifilimu ngokusebenzisa imizwa kanye nokucophelela kulele olwazini umfundi analo loku-editha ifilimu, ukukhatha, amashothi amakhamera, ukuhlanganisa izingxenye ezehlukene zefilimu ukulandelanisa izinto zonke ezivela kukhamera nangendlela ezihleleke ngayo, umculo, okokugqoka, ukukhanyisa, kanye nemisindo. Ukukwazi ukufunda ifilimu kuleli zinga kuwukuzinithisa okungalinganiseki kunalowo obukela ifilimu: isethameli siyasuka kule ngxenye yokuba singabi yingxenye yefilimu ukuze siyiqonde kahle, lokhu okusho ukulalela lokho okulandiswayo, kunokubheka kanzulu lokhu

okwengeza ekudepheni, kanye nokuqonda ukuthi uMqondisi, uMhleli benza ababukayo ifilimu bayibheke ngendlela abayihlele ngayo.

- Inkulumo-mpendulwano kanye nesenzeko, nobudlelwano babo kubalingiswa nendikimba; ukufunda nokubhala ama-script efilimini.
- Isakhiwo, isakhiwana, ukuvezwa komlingiswa, udweshu, inhloso yomdlalo nesakhiwo, kumbandakanya ingwijikhwebu, nesiphetho; isigameko esethusayo nesingalindelekile, nanokuthi zenziwa kanjani
- Amasu asetshenziswa emabhayisikobho (okubonwayo, okulalelwayo, nokubonwa kulalelwe) njengokusebenzisa umbala, izihlokwana, indatshana, Inkulumo-mpendulwano, umculo, umsindo, ukukhanya, uku-editha, ukufreyima, izindlela zokuthatha izithombe, amasu okusebenzisa ikhamera, ukunyakaza kwekhamera, ukuthatha isithombe usondeze eduzane okuthile, ukuthatha isithombe ukubikezela kanye nokujejeza emuva .



**Amatheksthi asetshenziselwa ukudidiyela ukufundiswa kwamakhono ezilimi, iBanga le-10 kuya kwele-12**

Ngaphezu kwamatheksthi emibhalo afundelwa izimiso, izinhlobo okufanele zenziwe zeBanga le-10 kuya kwele-12, kufaka amatheksthi abhaliwe kanye nabukelwayo anhlolobhlobo. Amanye amatheksthi ayofundelwa ukukhanga kwawo, amanye afundelwa ukwenza izibonelo zokuveza izinhlobo kanye namasu okubhala.

Othisha kumele benze isiqiniseko sokuthi abafundi bafunda izinhlobo zamatheksthi ezechukene ngonyaka. Kufanele kube khona ukulinganisa phakathi kwamatheksthi amafushane namatheksthi amade kanye nokufundela izinhloso ezechukene, ukufundela ukuncoma okubhaliwe, amatheksthi adluliselwa kubantu abaningi kwezokuxhumana namatheksthi abonwayo okuzithokozisa.

<p><b>Amatheksthi ayimibhalo emiselwe ukufundwa:</b></p> <p><b>Izinhlobo eziphakanyisiwe</b></p> <p>Kuphakanyiswa izinhlobo zemibhalo ezilandelayo ezifakwe emqulwini onohlu lwemibhalo emiselwe ukufundwa.</p> <p><b>Inoveli/ubuciko bomlomo</b></p> <p>Izinganekwane</p> <p>Izinganekwane: eziyi-8 eBangeni le-10</p> <p>Izinganekwane: eziyi-8 eBangeni le-11</p> <p>Izinganekwane:-eBangeni le-12</p> <p><b>Umdlalo</b></p> <p><b>Izinkondlo</b></p> <p>(IBanga le-10: izinkondlo eziyi-10)</p> <p>(IBanga le-11: izinkondlo eziyi-10)</p> <p>(IBanga le-12 izinkondlo eziyi-12)</p> <p><b>Okokuzithuthukisa</b></p> <p>Izindaba ezimfushane</p> <p>Amafilimu</p> <p>Izinhlelo zikamabonakude eziqokiwe</p> <p>Imidlalo yomsakazo</p> <p>Ama-eseyi</p> <p>Amabhayografi</p> <p>Amabhayografi okuzibhalela</p> <p>Ubuciko bomlomo (<i>Labo abazohlolwa ngenoveli bangabufunda ubuciko bomlomo ukwenzela ukuzithuthukisa</i>)</p>	<p><b>Imibhalo yamatheksthi enikeza ulwazi</b></p> <p>Isichazamazwi</p> <p>I-Ensayikilophidiya</p> <p>Amasheduli</p> <p>Amabhuku ezingcingo</p> <p>Incwadi (zolimi)</p> <p>IThesorasi</p> <p>Amathebuli ezikhathi</p> <p>Ithebuli lezinhlalo zikamabonakude</p> <p><b>Amatheksthi abhaliwe emithombo yezindaba</b></p> <p>Izindatshana zamaphephabhuku</p> <p>Izindatshana zamaphephandaba</p> <p>Ezabaleli</p> <p>Izimemezelo</p> <p>Umlando kamufi</p> <p>Izibuyekezo</p> <p>Izikhangiso</p> <p><b>Amatheksthi alalelwayo abhalwe phansi</b></p> <p>Inkulumo-mpendulwano</p> <p>Izinkulumo</p> <p>Amaculo</p> <p>Amahlanya</p> <p><b>Imibhalo yokuziqambela yokuxhumana ngezindlela ezinhlobonhlobo</b></p> <p>Incwadi</p> <p>Amadayari</p> <p>Izimemo</p> <p>Ama-imeyili</p> <p>Imiyalezo yocingo ebhaliwe</p> <p>Amanothi</p> <p>Imibiko</p> <p><b>Imibhalo yokuziqambela yokuxhumana kwezamabhizinisi</b></p> <p>Incwadi yomsebenzi</p> <p>Amaminithi omhlangano ne-ajenda</p>	<p><b>Imithombo yezindaba enhlobonhlobo/namatheksthi abonwayo anika ulwazi</b> Amashadi, amamephu, amagrafu, amathebula, amashadi acaziwe, imibhalo esabulembu, imidwebo, amaphosta, amaflaya, amapheshana okusabalalisa ulwazi, amabhroshe, amasayini nezimpawu, uhlelo lukamabonakude lokwazisa, amakhasi ewebhu, izigcawu ze-intanethi, amabhlogi, ifesibhuku nezinye izigcawu zokuxhumana, amaphrojektha, amathransipharensi olwazi</p> <p><b>Imidiya enhlobonhlobo /amatheksthi okukha ngeso</b></p> <p>Amafilimu, izithombe, imifanekiso</p> <p><b>Imithombo yezindaba enhlobonhlobo/namatheksthi abukelwa ukuzijabulisa nokuchitha isizungu</b> Amafilimu, izinhlelo zikamabonakude, amavidiyo omculo, amakhathuni, umfanekiso wokuhlekisa ngomuntu, okusandaba ehlekisayo, amahlanya, igrafiti</p> <p><b>Amatheksthi alalelwayo</b> Izinhlelo zomsakazo Ukufundwa kwemidlalo Ukufundwa kwamanoveli noma izindaba ezimfushane Izinkulumo eziqoshiwe</p> <p><b>Izikhangiso zomsakazo, umabonakude, amaphephandaba namaphephabhuku</b></p>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Ubude bamatheksthi abhalwayo obuzosetshenziswa**

UHLOBO LWETHEKSTHI	AMABANGA	INANI LAMAGAMA	
Isifundo sokuqondisisa	IBanga le-10	Amagama angama-380 kuya kwanga-440	
	IBanga le-11	Amagama angama-440 kuya kwanga-500	
	IBanga le-12	Amagama angama-500 kuya kwanga-560	
UHLOBO LWETHEKSTHI	AMABANGA	INANI LAMAGAMA	UBUDE BOKUFINGQIWE
Ukufingqa	IBanga le-10	Amagama angama-220	Amagama angama-70 kuya kwangama-80
	IBanga le-11	Amagama angama-320	
	IBanga le-12	Amagama angama-350	

### 3.3 UKUBHALA NOKWETHULA

Ukubhala nokwethula kuhlukanisa izinto ezintathu: (1) Ukusebenzisa inqubo yokubhala, (2) ukufunda nokusebenzisa ulwazi lwezakhiwo nezimpawu ezahlukeni zamatheksthi/Imibhalo, (3) ukufunda ukusebenzisa ulwazi lwezigaba nezakhiwo zemisho, izigaba kanye nezimpawu zokuloba.

#### **Inqubo yokubhala**

Ukufundisa ukubhala kumbandakanya ukusetshenziswa kwenqubo. Nakuba kungewona wonke Amabanga enqubo yokubhala ongawasebenzisa noma kukusiphi isimo. Isibonelo, uma abafundi bebhala izinhlobo zamatheksthi/imibhalo ajwayelekile, abadingi ukuhlaziya izakhiwo nezimpawu zolimi ngokujulile. Kungaba khona izikhathi lapho othisha bengafuna ukugxila ezakhiweni zemisho noma izigaba zokubhala, noma abafundi babhale amatheksthi angenalo uhlaka ngesikhathi bezilungiselela ukubhala izivivinyo zabo.

Ngesikhathi sokubhala, abafundi kulindeleke ukuba benze lokhu:

- Ukuhlela/Ngaphambi kokubhala.
- Ukubhala izinhlobo zokuqala
- Ukubuyekeza.
- Ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise
- Ukulungisa amaphutha.
- Ukwethula

#### ***Ukulungiselela/ngaphambi kokubhala***

- Ukucabanga ngenhloso yombhalo nezethameli eziqondwe umbhali.
- Ukunquma ngezidingo zesakhiwo, isitayela, nombono wombhalo.
- Ukuthola, ahlele, aqophe ulwazi okuzobhalwa ngalo.
- Ukusebenzisa imithombolwazi enhlobonhlobo akhethe ulwazingqo.

#### ***Ukwakha izinhlobo zokuqala***

- Ukusebenzisa ngempumelelo imibono esemqoka nesekeleyo etholakale lapho kulungiselwa ukubhala.
- Ukwakha uhlaka lokuqala ecabangela inhloso, izethameli, isihloko nohlobo lombhalo;
- Ukufunda uhlaka ngokuhlolisisa athole nombiko walokho kwabanye (afunda nabo);
- Ukunquma ngokukhethwa kwamagama njengalawo anembayo, achazayo, imishwana ezokwenza ukuthi okubhalwayo kucace.
- Ukuthola izwi elizozwakala, kubonakale nesitayela ngokusebenzisa ulimi oluzofanela izethameli nenhloso yombhalo.
- Ukukhombisa umbono wakho ngokuchaza okungamagugu, izinkolelo nolwazijikelele lwempilo.

- Ukufaka imininingwane eqondene ngqo nezidingo zombhalo (ngokusebenzisa inkulumo ecashuniwe, echaza kabanzi nelekelela ukuthi umbhalo uzwakale kahle).

***Ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha kanye nokwethula.***

- Ukusebenzisa imigomo ebekiwe ukuhlolisisa umsebenzi wakho nowabanye ukuze umbhalo wenziwe ngcono.
- Ukulungisa ukukhethwa kwamagama, izakhiwo zezigaba nezakhiwo zemisho (faka inkulumo eyengeziwe, sebenzisa amagama aguqukayo anembayo).
- Ukugwema amagama angacacile, ukushovuza, amagama angenamsebenzi, ulimi olungemukelekile nolucasulayo.
- Ukuhlolisisa okuqukethwe, isitayela kanye nerejista.
- Ukusebenzisa kahle izimpawu zokuloba, isipelingi nohlelo ngendlela efanele nenembayo.
- Ukulungiselela uhlaka lokugcina.
- Ukwethula okubhalile.

**Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa**

***Irejista, isitayela nezwi***

- Ukusebenzisa ngendlela irejista enezimiso nengenazimiso isib. Ukusebenzisa isitayela sokukhuluma nomuntu okhulumayo encwadini yobungane, nolimi olunezimiso encwadini yakomkhulu/yasemthethweni.
- Ukukhuluma ngqo nofundayo ngendlela yakho.
- Ukubhala ngokuzethemba; ungalokothi uxolise ngokushoyo noma ngombono wakho.
- Ukusebenzisa izimo ezehlukene uma kunesidingo.

***Ukukhethwa kwamagama***

- Ukusebenzisa izenzo ezinhlobonhlobo ezenza kugqame, izichasiso, nezandiso ukuze unikeze imininingwane eqonde ngqo, bese uchaza kuzwakale lapho ubhala mhlawumbe indaba elandisayo noma echazayo.
- Ukusebenzisa kahle ulimi olunezimiso nolungenazimiso (ulimi olungemukelekile/ulimi oluhlambalazayo nejagoni) ngendlela.
- Ukunikeza amaphuzu bese ubeka imibono.
- Ukubona incazelo esobala nefihlekile.
- Ukuphawula ngokungamagugu, izimo ezisongelayo, ukuchema, ukungaguquki, ulimi oluhlambalazayo, ulimi oluncengayo nolukhohlisayo, isib. amatheksthi ancengayo njenge-eseyi edaza inkani nama-athikhili amaphephandaba.

- Ukusebenzisa izinsiza nemithombolwazi njengezichazamazwi namathesarasi ukukhetha amagama anembayo nanohlonze.

## ***Ukwakhiwa kwemisho***

- Ukubhala izinhlobo ezehlukene zemisho kanye nemisho enobude obehlukene.
- Ukusebenzisa izingcezu zenkulumo ngokufanele.
- Ukusebenzisa umenzi, isenzo, umenziwa, inkathi, izimpambosi, ukuvuma, ukuphika, izindlela zesenzo, inkulumogqo nenkulumo ewumbiko.
- Ukusebenzisa amagama abuzayo – (kungani? nini? kanjani? yini?).
- Ukusebenzisa izinhlobo ezehlukene zemisho, njengesitatimende, umbuzo, umusho oqondile, umusho ombaxa nomusho omagatshagatsha.
- Ukusebenzisa izihlanganiso, izabizwana, izandiso, namagama aguqukayo azokwazi ukubumba kahle imisho.
- Ukusebenzisa izinhlobo ezehlukene zezabizwana ukuze inkulumo izoqonda, ukugcizelela, kanye nokuveza umenziwa nokunciphisa ukushovuza.
- Ukusebenzisa ngokufanele ukulandelana kwamagama emishweni ukuze okushiwoyo kugcizeleleke kahle futhi kuhehe.
- Ukusebenzisa izivumelwano ngendlela efanele.

## ***Ukubhalwa kwezigaba***

- Ukubhala izingxenye ezehlukene zezigaba: umusho oyisihloko/owumongo, imibono esemqoka kanye nesekeleyo, isingeniso esinohlonze, umzimba, isiphetho kanye nomusho osonga isigaba.
- Ukuqinisekisa ukuthi kubhalwa umbhalo obumbene, kubhalwa izigaba neziqephu ezehlukene kusetshenziswa izimpawu ezifanele noma izihlanganiso, izenzo ezidinga umenziwa kanye memishwana kanje:
  - o Ukuhlela ngokulandelana: okokuqala, okwesibili, okwesithathu, ngaphambili, ngemuva, uma, kamuva, kuze, ekugcineni, okulandelayo, kungekudala, ngaphambilini, ngemuva kwalokho.
  - o Ukunikeza incazelo/isisusa nomphumela: ngakho-ke, ngenxa yalokho, ngoba, ngaleso sizathu, nakuba, kungaba, yingakho, kusho ukuthi-ke, uma-ke.
  - o Ukulandelanisa ngendlela izinto ezenziwa ngayo isib. okokuqala, okwesibili, okwesithathu,
  - o Ukuqhathanisa/Ukwehlukanisa: okufanayo, okwehlukile, kuncane kuna..., kukhulu kune..., noma kunjalo, kodwa.
  - o Ukulandelanisa ngokubaluleka: njalo, okulandelayo, okokugcina.
  - o Ukulandelanisa ngezindawo: ngaphezulu, ngezansi, ngakwesokunxele, ngakwesokudla, njll.

- o Ukubhala okuvulelekile/okungenamkhawulo, ngokuvamile, elokuphetha.
- o Ukubhala isigaba esiphethayo: akusona isifingqo sokubhalwe ngenhla. Isigaba esiphethayo kumele sishiye ofundayo nomqondo noma umcabango azosala nawo noma esakhohlwa ukuthi wake wayifunda leyo ndaba. Akuvamile-ke ukuthi isigaba esiphethayo sikwenze lokhu, yingakho ofundayo esikhohlwa.

### ***Izimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi (Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi)***

Ukusebenzisa:

- Osonhlamvukazi, okhefana, osokucaphuna, amakholoni, ukudwebela, ukubhala lukeke, amasemikhloni, ama-aphostrofi, amakhonco, abakaki, nophawu lokwethula ulwazi olwengeziwe (kungaba ihayifeni noma abakaki)
- Ulwazi lwamaphethini nemithetho yokupela kahle amagama:
  - o Ulwazi lwamaphethini amagama ngokwezingcezu zenkulumo.
  - o Ulwazi lwemisuka, iziphongozo nezijobelelo.
  - o Ulwazi lokwehlukanisa amalunga.
- Izichazamazwi nokubheka isipelingi.
- Izifinyezo, kuhambisana nezindlela ezehlukene zokusakaza nezethameli.

### **Izinhlobo zamatheksthi: Izimpawu nesakhiwo semibhalo ekhiqiziwe**

Lesi siqephu sichaza uchungechunge lwezinhlobo zamatheksthi (ama-eseyi nemibhalo edlulisa imilayeso) okufanele abafundi bafundiswe ukuzibhala eBangeni le-10 kuya kwele-12.

**Ama-eseyi:**

#### ***Indaba elandisayo***

Indaba elandisayo ixoxa indaba noma ikhuluma ngesigameko esedlule, yahleleka ngendlela ezoletsa umqondo.

Nazi izimpawu zendaba elandisayo:

- Ukubhala indaba/isigameko esadlula/esuselwe ekhanda.
- Ukusebenzisa isakhiwo esikholakalayo.
- Ukusebenzisa inkathi eyedlule, kuyenzeka umbhali asebenzise inkathi yamanje ngenhloso yokugqamisa okwenzekayo.
- Isigaba esiyisingeniso kufanele simhehe umfundi.
- Isiphetho kumele kube esenelisayo, noma esinobungwijikwebu, noma ukudida kodwa kumele kungabi lula ukuqagela ukuthi indaba izophetha kanjani.
- Ubhala inkulumo ngqo uma ufuna ukugqamisa umlingiswa, nenkulumo ewumbiko uma ufuna ofundayo aqhele kokhulumayo.

- Usebenzisa izichasiso lapho kudingekile khona, kodwa izindaba ezinhle ziqoqekile. Ababhali bayawasusa onke amagama angenanhloso.

### ***Indaba echazayo***

Ukuchaza kukabili, kungaba into esingayibona yenzeka noma kuchazwe into ezimele nje. Kokubili kudinga ulimi olulula noluqondile. Ungavumeli abafundi ukuba bachaze ngokweqile. Fundisisa iziqephu ezichazayo, ezibhalwe ngababhali asebenkantshubomvu. Iningi labo alizisebenzisi izichasiso ukuchaza kodwa kwedlule kube kuhle. Yenza ukuthi abafundi balingise lezo ziqephu ozicaphunile. Okuchazwe ngamagama okuchaza akuhehi, okubalulekile ukuchaza ngendlela elula nenembayo, njengokuchaza isitulo, umakhalekhukhwini. Okunye kungaba ukuchaza abantu abasezithombeni ezinikeziwe. Ukuchaza kusetshenziselwa kakhulu ukwakha isithombe, umoya nesimo esidingekayo. Emafilimini lokhu kuyabonakala kanti emibhalweni kuvezwa ngamagama lapho ukukhethwa kwamagama kugqamisa umqondo ofihlekile kunalowo osobala.

Nazi izimpawu zendaba echazayo. Umlobi u-

- chaza umuntu othile/into ethile ukuze ofundayo abe nombono walowo muntu/into.
- wakha isithombe ngamagama.
- khetha amagama ngokucophelela ukuze afinyelele lapho ehlose khona
- sebenzisa imifanekisomqondo wokubona, wokuhoqela, yokuzwa, wokunambitha kanye nowokuthinta.
- sebenzisa izimo zokukhuluma.

### ***Indaba edaza inkani, enhlangothimbili (eqhathanisayo), neningayo***

Indaba edaza inkani yethula impikiswano kuvunyelwana noma kuphikiswano ngesihloko (Kungani ngikholwa ukuthi omama banesisindo kunamadoda), indaba eqhathanisayo imayelana nengxoxo edingida amacala amabili-umbhali ubhala avumelane nesihloko aphinde abhale amaphuzu aphikisana nesihloko. Uhlangothi oluthathwe ngumbhali luze lugqame kahle esiphethweni sendaba. (Ngabe omama banesisindo kunamadoda? Indaba ecabangisisayo yethula imicabango nemibono mayelana nesihloko ngaphandle kwemizamo yokuvumelana noma ukuphikisana nesihloko (Umama wesimanje: imibono yami).

- **Endabeni edaza inkani** umlobi uveza umbono othile ngokuthatha uhlangothi oluthile. Umlobi uvikela imibono yakhe noma nokungaguquki kuphinde kufakazelwe ukukhethwa kohlangothi olulodwa . Isiphetho kumele sicacise ukuthi umbhali kuphi/ukholelwaphi nokuthi kungani.
- **Indaba eqhathanisayo** ibheka izinhlangothi zombili, yethule ngokulinganayo zombili izinhlangothi. Isakhiwo salolu hlobo sihlelwa kahle futhi sicacile; kumele okuyikhona ukuthi kumele kuvele ukungachemi; kodwa umbhali angaveza umbono wakhe; kungasetshenziswa ulimi oluthinta imizwa; umbono ophumelelayo lapha yilowo obekwe kahle futhi ozwakalayo. Isiphetho sishiya umfundi ecacelwe bha ukuthi yiluphi uhlangothi umbhali ahambisana nalo.
- **Endabeni eningayo** yethula imicabango, imibono, imizindlo kanye nemizwa ngesihloko esithile. Ikakhulukazi kusuke okuthile akuzwa ngaphakathi. Kuvamise ukuba kuhambisane nemizwa yakhe; kudinga isakhiwo esihlelwe kahle, kodwa kumele singethuli isiphetho esicacile. Futhi akumele sikhombise ingxoxo elingana macala onke, nakuba kungenzeka. Kungaba ngesihlekisayo noma esingahlekisi.

***I-eseyi ehlulisa umbhalo ofundiwe***

Kule-eseyi umbhali ubhala indaba esuselwe embhalweni awufundile, ngokuwuhumusha, awuhlolisise ngokuwuzwa kwakhe. Kubekwa imibono yesekelwe ngokukhombisa ngezibonelo ezisembhalweni ofundiwe. Ulimi lwethethweni lungasetshenziswa ukukhombisa ukuthi nasembhalweni zisekhona izimpawu zolimi. Isitayela esisemthethweni, kodwa kunikeza umbhali ithuba lokuba aveze imizwa yakhe. Abafundi bangacelwa ukuba baphendule ngendlela abafisa ngayo kwamanye ama-eseyi.

**Imibhalo edlulisa imilayezo:*****Incwadi yomsebenzi/yasemthethweni/yakomkhulu***

Ukubhala incwadi yomsebenzi kubalulekile empilweni yansuku zonke, yingakho nesakhiwo sayo sibalulekile. Abafundi kumele babhale Incwadi yomsebenzi zangempela, uma kuvuma, baze bazipose nje impela balindele nezimpendulo. Incwadi yomsebenzi ezibhalwa kungenanhloso, kungezona ezangempela ziyavilaphisa. Incwadi zezicelo njengezokucela isikhundla enyuvesi, nezokucela umsebenzi, ziphendulwa ngempela. Ukubaluleka kwencwadi-ke kuzokwaziwa. Enye incwadi ingathunyelwa ephephandabeni, uma isihloko sithinta izindaba zomphakathi. Okuqukethwe yikhona okubalulekile kulo mqulu, hhayi isakhiwo.

Zama ukwenza zonke izinhlobo zezincwadi yomsebenzi, njengencwadi yokucela isikhundla, incwadi eya kuMhleli wephephandaba, incwadi yokukhononda, njll.

- Namathela ezidingweni zalolo hlobo lwencwadi, njengesakhiwo nesitayela.
- Sebenzisa ulimi oluqondile nolulula.
- Khumbula ukuthi izethameli ezihlosiwe kumele zikuqonde okushiwoyo, ukuze zikwazi ukuphendula uma kudingekile.
- Umbhalo mawucace futhi uqonde, uhleleke kahle, futhi unembe.
- Kusetshenziswa irejista yolimi efanelekile.
- Kuphethwa ngendlela efanelekile ugcine ngesibongo kanye nezinhlamvu zokuqala zamagama ombhali.

***Incwadi yobungane***

Noma ama-imeyili, amafeksi, nokunye sekuthathe isikhunda sencwadi yobungani, kusamele abafundi bafundiswe ukubhala incwadi yobungane. Uma kubhalwa Incwadi kumele kuqalwe ngezincwadi ezejwayelekile zamalunga emindeni, abangani, Incwadi eziya kuMhleli, njalonjalo.

Nazi iziphakamiso ezimayelana nokubhala incwadi yobungane:

- Kusetshenziswa ulimi olungabekelwe migomo, kanjalo nerijista nesitayela.
- Kubhalwa ngolimi olulula noluhlabahlosile.
- Kuhlelwa kahle, kucace nokuthi empeleni uthini encwadini.
- Makube khona isingeniso, umzimba nesiphetho.
- Makube khona ikheli elilodwa lombhali, bese ubhala usuku ngezansi kwalo.



- Kusetshenziswa isibingelelo sobungani esingabekelwe mgomo, sibe ngezansi kwekheli lombhali.
- Akubhalwe isiphetho esingabekelwe migomo okanye esibekelwa imigomo kuthi ngezansi kwaso kubhalwe igama lombhali kuphela.

## ***I-ajenda yomhlangano***

Ukubhala i-memorandumu, i-ajenda namaminithi omhlangano kubaluleke kuphela uma kufeza inhloso. Indlela engcono yokufundisa ukubhalwa kwale misebenzi ukuthi abafundi babheke i-vidiyo yokuthile noma-ke bethamele umhlangano wangempela, mabacelwa ukuthi babhale amaminithi kulowo mhlangano, abakhiphe ne-ajenda kulawo maminithi, bese beqhathanisa i-ajenda yabo naleyo yomhlangano wangempela. Uma kungenziwa ngale ndlela, abafundi bagcina beziqagelela ukuthi i-ajenda namaminithi yinto enjani. Yakha i-ajenda ezosetshenziswa emhlanganweni ozicabangela wona, bese ucela abafundi babhale abacabanga ukuthi yikhona okungaba amaminithi omhlangano, ungagudluki kulokho okukwi-ajenda. Lokhu-ke akufani ncimishi namaminithi omhlangano obewukhona ngempela.

- Bhala ngokufingqiwe uhla lwalokho okuzokhulunywa ngakho.
- Thumela lokhu kubantu okumele bethamele lo mhlangano.
- Hlela izihloko ngokubaluleka kwazo.
- Nquma ukuthi isihloko ngasinye sizothatha isikhathi esingakanani.

## ***Amaminithi omhlangano***

- Bhala okwenzeke emhlanganweni.
- Khombisa lokhu:
  - o Igama lenhlangano.
  - o Usuku, indawo, nesikhathi esichithiwe emhlanganweni.
  - o Uhla lwabantu abebekhona.
- Usebenzisa amagama ashiwo ngesikhathi kwenziwa iziphakamiso.
- Bhala ufingqe obekushiwo nokugcine kuvunyelwene ngakho.
- Sebenzisa inkathi eyedlule.

## ***Inkulumo, Inkulumo-mpendulwano nenhlolokhono***

Lezi zinhlobo zeziqephu zincike ekukhulumeni, ngakho-ke akumele zenziwe njengomsebenzi wokubhala.

### ***Inkulumo***

- Qala ngokukhetha isitayela ozosilandela, njengokuthi Nini? Kuphi? Kungani? (isizathu), Ubani? (izethameli) nokuthi Yini?
- Ovulayo uheha izethameli.

- Yakha kahle amaphuzu ugweme amagama asetshenziswa njalo aseze alahlekelwe nawukubaluleka kwawo.
- Sebenzisa imisho emifushane, ngemibono esobala usebenzise izibonelo ezejwayelekile.
- Gxeka ngendlela elinganayo uveze amaphuzu agxekayo, futhi uveze isisombululo.
- Isiphetho sibalulekile, futhi akukona ukufingqa lokhu okubhaliwe.

#### *Inkulumo-mpendulwano*

- Qamba inkulumo ezoba phakathi kwabantu ababili noma ngaphezulu.
- Bhala okushiwo yisikhulumi njengoba kunjalo, uveze imibono yaso ngqo.
- Sebenzisa umugqa omusha ukukhombisa isikhulumi esisha.
- Yeluleka izikhulumi (abafundayo) ukuthi kukhulunywa kanjani noma yenza okunikezwe kubakaki ngaphambi kokukhulunywa kwamagama.
- Yakha isithombe somqondo esikhombisa isimo sokuzoxoxwa ngakho ngaphambi kokuba ubhale.
- Inkulumo-mpendulwano iyisinyathelo esihle sokuqala ukufundisa ukubhala ngenxa yokuthi Inkulumo-mpendulwano enhle iveza ukusebenza kolimi lwesiZulu ezimweni zokukhulunywayo. Inkulumo-mpendulwano ayibi phakathi kwabantu ababili kuphela.

#### *Inhlolokhono/i-inthavyu*

- Khuthaza ohlolwayo ngokubuza imibuzo.
- Bhala amagama ezikhulumi ngasesandleni sokunxele sekhasi.
- Sebenzisa umugqa omusha ukukhombisa isikhulumi esisha.
- Inhlolokhono iyimibhalo yengxoxo; inhlolokhono ingaqulwa ibe indaba elandisayo. Abafundi uma bebhala amapheshana enhlolokhono, bakwazi nokubona ngokushesha umehluko phakathi kwesiZulu esibhalwayo nesikhulunywayo, kangangoba bagcina sebona ukuthi ukwethula inhlolokhono efundekayo, kumbandakanya ukulungiswa kwamaphutha okwenziwa ngokukhulu ukucophelela. Lokhu-ke ubuhle bokubhala inhlolokhono/i-inthavyu, ngaphandle kokubheka kakhulu okuqukethwe.

#### ***Umbiko (obekelwe imigomo kanye nongabekelwe migomo)***

Imibiko yimiqulu ebalulekile futhi esemthethweni, futhi isebenza kahle uma okuhlolwayo kuyinto eyenzeke ngempela nebalulekile kubafundi. Ayikho into embi njengokubhala umbiko ongelona iqiniso noma umbiko ngesihloko umbhali angasithandi.

- Bhala into eyenzekile ngale ndlela eyenzeke ngayo, isib. ingozi noma okunye nje okuboniwe.
- Makube nesihloko, isingeniso (okwenzeke phambilini, inhloso kanye nomklamo), umzimba (Ubani? Kungani? Nini? Yini? Kanjani?), isiphetho, iziphakamiso, imithombolwazi, isingezelelo.
- Lungiselela: qoqa uhlele ulwazi; bhala amaphuzu.
- Sebenzisa ulwazi oluthi alube olubekelwe imigomo kafuphi kanjalo nerejista nesitayela.

- Sebenzisa:
  - o Inkathi yamanje (ngaphandle kwalawo owenzeka kudala).
  - o Amabizo ejwayelekile.
  - o Umuntu wesithathu.
  - o Nikeza incazelo yokwenzeke ngempela.
  - o Amagama nemishwana esifanelene nesimo okhuluma ngaso.
  - o Ulimi olunezimiso, olungenabo ubungani.

### ***Isibuyekezo***

Isibuyekezo asivamile ukulandela iphethini. Akudingekile nokuthi sigxile esihlokeni esithile sencwadi, nomase filimunoma se-CD. Ngokwejwayelekile, ababuyekazayo bathola kuqala ukuthi yini ebukekwayo nokuthi ngubani othintekayo. Ababuyekazayo bayazama ukwethembeka; abangathembekile bahlala ngqo kumuntu bamnaphaze. Amahlaya nawo avame ukutholakala lapho kubuyekazwa. Abanye yiyona ndlela abaziwa ngayo leyo. Yethulela abafundi izibuyekazo ezivela emithonjeni enhlobonhlobo yolwazi ukuze ubakhombise umahluko okhona ekubhalweni kwalolu hlobo lombhalo.

- Khombisa indlela umuntu ngamunye athinteka ngayo uma ebuka umsebenzini wobuciko, ifilimu, incwadi, isehlakalo njll.
- Veza “uvo kumbe isinqumo” sakhe ngomsebenzi (wakhe) owethuliwe.
- Isibuyekazo siveza imizwa nemibono yomuntu uqobo. Kungenzeka abantu ababili babuyekeze umsebenzi ofanayo kepha baveze imibono eyehlukene kakhulu.
- Veza amaphuzu aqonde ngqo, isib. Igama lombhali, isihloko sencwadi/uphrojusa noma umlingisi, igama labashicileli inkampani eyethule lowo mdlalo noma isithombe kanye nenani elidingekayo (uma kuvuma).

### ***I-athikhili yephephandaba***

- Shaya ngamafuphi kodwa ushaye emhlohlweni.
- Qinisekisa ukwedlulisa lokho okusemqoka ukuze ningedukelani nabafundi (bephephandaba).
- Fingqa ngokunembayo, ungachezuki eqinisweni.
- Nikeza isithombe esicacile kanye nesihlokwana esihle.
- Qala ngamaphuzu asemqoka: athinta ukuthi okubikayo kwenziwe ubani, kanjani, kuyini, kuphi, ngani nakangakanani.

+

***I-athikhili yephephabhuku***

Isikhathi esiningi izindatshana zephephabhuku zigqamisa lokho okuthandwayo noma okungathandwa, nalokho okwehlukile esweni lombhali, yikhona okuhamba phambili, nanokuthi kumele kugqugquzelwe kubafundi. Abafundi bayadinga ukubhala izindatshana zephephabhuku ezisezingeni eliphakeme ngakho konke lokho abakubona kusemqoka, nokungamahlanya, kokuhlekisa, nokokugxeka isihloko esithile. Cishe abafundi abaningi bejwayele ukufunda lona lolu hlobo lwezindatshana zephephabhuku.

Ubuchwepheshe be-intanethi bugcwele izindatshana, nokuthi isitayela nokuqokethwe akwehlukile kangako kulokhu okuyizimbangi zabo, okuthi yize ziwuhlobo oluthe ukwehluka kancane kokubhalwe kuphephabhuku, kuyinto enhle ukuthi abafundi balufunde ngoba yilona oseludla ubhedu. Ukwenza abafundi bazisungulele amakheli abo ama-blogs ku-intanethi kuyindlela encomekayo yokubejwayeza ukubhala bebhalela isimo esithile, okuhlenganisa ukuqikelela izethameli, nokusondelene nokuqokethwe kwangaleso sikhathi, ulimi nephimbo elifanele.

Qaphela lokhu okulandelayo:

- Isihloko kumele sihehe.
- Isitayela asehluke, sixoxe-ngqo nofundayo.
- Isitayela singachaza ngokusobala noma sinkondloze, ngendlela engathandwa abafundayo.
- Amagama, izindawo, izikhathi, izikhundla nayo yonke imininingwane edingekayo kumele kufakwe kule ndatshana.
- Indatshana kumele iqubule isasasa.
- Mayelana nezibukezo, akukabi bikho luhlaka olwaziwayo olungasetshenziswa ebhukwini lephephabhuku.

***Ikharihulamu vithaye***

Njengoba abantu abaningi sebathanda ukusebenzisa amaphethini, kuhle ukulandela ukuthi yimaphi amaphethini angasebenziseka ngempumelelo.

- Zethule kahle kulo mbhalo okuveza kubantu.
- Zethule kahle zibekwa nje.
- Ulwazi olwethula ngawe, kumele lucace, lushaye emhlohlweni.
- Yisho okuthile okwenza ufaneleke kulowo msebenzi owufunayo.
- Veza nalokhu:
  - o Imininingwane yakho.
  - o Okuphasiweyo.
  - o Ulwazi lomsebenzi (uma lukhona).
  - o Amagama abantu abangafakaza ngawe/banike isiqinisekiso kokubhalile.

**Umlando kamufi**

Kusemqoka ukuveza ulwazi olulandelayo uma kubhalwa ulwazi ngomufi:

- Igama nesibongo salowo oshonile, ikheli, ubudala, usuku lokuzalwa, indawo lapho azalelwa khona, ashonela khona, imbangela yokufa, ubude besikhathi asigulile (uma ethathwe ukugula) kanye nezihlobo zakhe (abazali njll.).
- Akuzuzile empilweni, ngokwemfundo, nasemphekathini.
- Amanqampunqampu ngomufi. Kungathintwa izinto ayezenza eziyohlala zikhumbuleka emndenini nakubangani. Lokhu kwakha isithombe esicacile kofundayo.
- Umbiko wokuzwelana nomndeni nawo ungafakwa.

**QAPHELA:**

- Eminye imilando ingafaka okusondelene nomufi njengenkondlo.
- Ulimi olusetshenziswayo yilolo olumiselwe imigomo.
- Sebenzisa izihlonipho njengokuthi 'uhambile, udlulile emhlabeni, usishiyile' kunokuthi 'ufile'.

**Ubude bamatheksthi abhalwayo obumele bukhizwe:**

Amatheksthi	AmaBanga	Izinkondlo Inani lamagama	Inoveli/umdlalo/ubuciko bomlomo Inani lamagama
<b>Ama-eseyi emibhalo</b>	IBanga le-10	Amagama ayi-90 kuya kwangama-140	Amagama angama-240 kuya kwangama-290
	IBanga le-11	Amagama ayi-140 kuya kwangama-190	Amagama angama-290 kuya kwangama-340
	IBanga le-12	Amagama ayi-190 kuya kwangama-240	Amagama angama-340 kuya kwangama-390
<b>Ama-eseyi</b>		<b>AmaBanga</b>	<b>Inani lamagama</b>
Achazayo, alandayo, aningayo, aphikisayo/adaza inkani, eqhathanisayo	IBanga le-10		Amagama angama-240 kuya kwangama-290
	IBanga le-11		Amagama angama-290 kuya kwangama-340
	IBanga le-12		Amagama angama-340 kuya kwangama-390
<b>Imibhalo edlulisa imilayezo</b>		<b>AmaBanga</b>	<b>Inani lamagama</b>
Ikharikhulamuu vithaye, nencwadi ephelezelayo, inhlokhono ebhalwayo, ingxoxo, Incwadi : yokucela umsebenzi, yokukhononda, yobungani, eya ephephandabeni, ephephabhukwini, izindatshana, amaminithi ne-ajenda (okubuzwa kuhambisane), umlando ngomufi, izibuyekezo, imibiko (emiselwe nengamiselwe), inkulumo elungiselelwe nengalungiselelwe	IBanga le-10		Amagama ayi-100 kuya kwangama-120
	IBanga le-11		
	IBanga le-12		

### 3.4 IZAKHIWO NEZIMISO ZOKUSETSHENZISWA KOLIMI

Kuleli zinga kufanele ngabe abafundi sebenolwazi oluyisisekelo sohlelo lolimi: izingcezu zenkulumo, imithetho yezivumelwano, ukusetshenziswa kwenkathi, izingasenzo nezinsizasenzo, izakhiwo zemisho. Izakhiwo zolimi azisafundiswa zizimele ngazodwana. Uhlelo lolimi nje selufundiswa ludidiyelwe ngenxa yokubaluleka kwalo kulezi zingxenywe ezimbili:

- Izakhiwo zolimi zibaluleke kakhulu ekutholeni ulwazi olusha, ukuhlaziya kanye nokuhlola amatheksthi, angamaqiniso nangewona, kanye naqanjiwe angakholakali. Lapha kumele abafundi bakwazi ukuqaphela ukuthi umbhali uzisebenzise kanjani, izakhiwo zamagama, ukuhleleka kwemisho nendlela ethize edinga ukuqashelwa (ubude, ubunzima noma ubulula bezakhiwo), ukuba khona nokungabi bikho kwezigaba zamabizo; ukusetshenziswa ngendlela engejwayelekile kwenkathi yesenzo; ukusetshenziswa kwenkulumo ngqo nenkulumo ewumbiko, ukusetshenziswa kwempambosi yokwenziwa. Ngokubheka ukubaluleka izakhiwo zolimi ekwakheni umqondo, ukwethula amaqiniso nokugqugquzela ukuqonda kabanzi amatheksthi nokuthi asebenza kanjani, abafundi bazozibonela izakhiwo zolimi, nanokuthi kungani kudingeka luhlale luba yingxenywe yanoma yikuphi ukukhuluma esiZulwini.
- Uhlelo lolimi lubaluleke kakhulu emibhalweni yabafundi. Njengoba ukubhala kungeminye yemisebenzi ebalulekile kuleli banga, kubalulekile ukuthi abafundi babhale izinhloko zama-eseyi ekilasini. Lokhu kunikeza othisha ithuba lokukwazi ukubona amaphutha ohlelo lolimi ngenkathi bebhala. Ngokulungisa amaphutha ngaso lesi sikhathi, kunokuba kulungiswe ngesikhathi abafundi sebeletha umsebenzi ukuthi uzomakwa, othisha bazothola kukuncane okudinga ukulungiswa, abafundi bazotshengiswa ngaphambi kokuba baqede umsebenzi, ukuthi kungalungiswa kanjani. Incane intshisekelo ekulungiseni umsebenzi osubuya kuthisha futhi abafundi abazuzi lutho kulokho. Lokhu kusiza uthisha ukubona ukuthi bukhona ubudedengu obukhona ekubhalweni kohlelo lolimi ngabafundi, nokungaqondi okuthile okuzomele kufundiswe ekilasini. Enye indlela yokuxhumanisa uhlelo lolimi kanye nokubhala, ukunikeza abafundi imibhalo (okunconywa ukuthi kungabi umsebenzi obhalwe abafundi) enamaphutha ohlelweni lolimi, abafundi bahlukaniswe ngababili ukuba bamake lo msebenzi baphinde bachaze ukuthi yini engalungile nokuthi ayilungile ngani. Othisha kumele bagxile kakhulu emaphutheni avamile, noma bafake amaphutha amaningi azolungiswa ngabafundi. Indlela elula yokusebenza ngohlelo lolimi ukusebenza ngemibhalo. Zombili lezi zinto zibalulekile futhi ngeke wazehlukanisa ngoba yizo eziveza impumelelo ekusetshenzisweni kolimi.

Isengezelo soku-1 sinethebula elinohlu lwezakhiwo nezimiso zokusethenziswa kolimi okulindeleke ukuthi abafundi bazisebenzise uma benza imisebenzi yokufundwa kolimi enjengokulalela, ukukhuluma, ukufunda kanye nenqubo yokubhala. Lezi zakhiwo kumele zifundiswe ngokwesimo zididiyelwe ngendlela efanele ezimweni ezahlukene ezithinta ama-oral, amatheksthi abonwayo nabhaliwe. Ethemini ngayinye uHlelo lokuFundisa olungezansi lunesikhathi esibekwe saba sobala sokufundisa izakhiwo zolimi, isib. Isonto lesi-7 nelesi-8, iBanga le-10. Kungasetshenziswa isifundo esisodwa ukufeza le nhloso. Ngakolunye uhlangothi, isifundo esisodwa ngesonto singasetshenziswa ukufundisa izakhiwo zolimi njengalokhu zidingeka.

### 3.5 IZINHLELO ZOKUFUNDISA

Izinhlelo zamasonto onke ezilandelayo **ziyizibonelo nje**, akuhlosiwe ukuvimba ngazo ezinye izinhlelo ezingase zisetshenziswe ngempumelelo. Isib. uthisha angakhetha ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko ekilasini ngokuphindelela, kokunye okungaqeda amasonto amabili. Omunye uthisha angakhetha ukufundisa uhlelo lolimi esifundweni sosuku noma ngaphezu kwalokho kuye ngokudingeka kwakho.

Izinhlelo zokufundisa zeBanga le-10 kuya kwele-12 zakhelwe phezu kwezinhlelo zamasonto adidiyelwe ngamabili esikhathini esingamahora ayisi-9. Abafundi beBanga le-10 kuya kwele-12 kumele okungenani banikezwe umsebenzi wasekhaya ongamahora ama-3 ngesonto, kanjalo futhi nemibhalo ethe xaxa okumele bayifunde kulolo limi. Bangabhaliswa imisebenzi ethile njengomsebenzi wasekhaya.

Uma kwakhiwa uhlelo oludidiyelwe lwamasonto amabili uthisha angahlanganisa imisebenzi ezihlokweni ezithile njengezithinta isimo sasemsebenzini, ukuguquka kwesimo sezulu, ukufunda incwadi eqokiwe, nekhono elithile eliphathelene nokufunda njengenkulumo-mpikiswano, ukubhala ngesihloko esidaza inkani, izimo zempikiswano nemibhalo ethile yokufundisa ulimi. Umsebenzi wamasonto amabili ungahlelwa nganoma iyiphi indlela njengokuqala ngokufunda, ukuxoxa, kulandele ukubhala. Umbhalo oqokiwe noma yimuphi-ke ungasetshenziswa ekufezeni le misebenzana engezansi.

Ukuze kwandiswe amathuba okufunda nokubhala, abafundi kulindeleke ukuthi benze lokhu okulandelayo okuyiziphakamiso zamasonto amabili:

- Bazimbadakanye emisebenzini yokulalela nokukhuluma.
- Bafunde isifundo sokuqondisisa bese bephendula imibuzo noma bafingqe.
- Bafunde imibhalo yobuciko emiselwe ukufundwa.
- Babhale ama-eseyi/izindaba noma imibhalo emide edlulisa imiyalezo.
- Bathuthukise futhi bazejwayeze ukusebenzisa ulimi ngendlela eyiyo belandela izimiso zolimi ekuxhumaneni (ukulalela, ukukhuluma, ukufunda kanye nokubhala).

Uthisha akulindelekile ukuthi amake wonke umsebenzi obhalwe ngabafundi kanye nama-oral. Uhlelo lokuFundisa luveza wonke amathaskhi amiselwe imigomo yokuhlola okudingeka ukuba uthisha awamake. Abafundi bangamakelana amathaskhi angamiselwe migomo belekelwa uthisha. Uthisha angakhetha amanye amathaskhi angamiselwe migomo bese ewamaka ukuze akhombise abafundi ukuthi basebenze kanjani.

Isibonelo, abafundi beBanga le-10 kumele babhale **izindaba ezimbili kanye nemibhalo emithathu edlulisa imiyalezo** ngethemu yokuqala. **Yi-eseyi eyodwa kanye nendatshana eyedlulisa umlayezo eyodwa okuzomakwa njengethaskhi yokuhlola okumiselwe imigomo.** Lawa amanye amathaskhi akuphoqelekele ukuthi uthisha awamake ngaphandle- ke uma ezithandela yena ukukwenza lokho.

Akusiwona umnqamulajuqu ukulandelana kokumele kufundwe kanye nesikhathi esibekiwe, uthisha angaqala kunoma iyiphi ingxenye yokutholakala oHlelweni lokuFundisa. Othisha kumele bazakhele Izinhlelo zokufundisa ezabo (noma basebenzise uHlelo lokuFundisa olutholakala ezincwadini) basebenzise ingqikithi yaleyo naleyo themu.

Unyaka nonyaka ubude bamathemu buyaguquka, ngakho-ke kubalulekile ukuthi uHlelo lokuFundisa luguqulwe ngangobude bethemu yalowo nyaka.

Amakhono, ingqikithi kanye namasu okutholakala ngezansi awabaliwe wonke. Uthisha akaphinde abheke lawa avezwe esigabeni sesi-3.1 kuya kwesesi-3.4.

Ukufundiswa kohlelo nezakhiwo zolimi kumele kususelwe ematheksthini futhi kugxile ekufundiseni ngesu lokuxhumana. Akufanele kufundiswe kuzimele kodwa. Indlela uHlelo lokuFundisa olumi ngayo, luveza ukuthi uhlelo, nezakhiwo zolimi zifakwe phakathi emakhonweni amathathu okumele afundiswe.

Nakuba amakhono evezwe ngokwehlukana oHlelweni lokuFundisa, kumele kufundiswe ngokudidiyela uma kunokwenzeka. Isib. Ekufundisweni kwenhlolekhono abafundi bangafunda itheksthi ebhaliwe bese bebhala inhlolekhono ebhalwayo kamuva. Ukuqokwa kohlelo nezakhiwo zolimi ezizofundiswa kumele kuhambisane nohlobo lomsebenzi wamasonto amabili ukuze kwelekelele ekukhiqizeni nasekuqondeni ematheksthi ama-oral kanye nabhalwayo asuke enziwa kuleso sikhathi samasonto amabili. Isib. Izichasiso, amagama amqondofana, amagama amqondophika, izandiso, inkathi edlule kwelekelela ekubhaleni indaba elandisayo noma echazayo.

Amasu okubhala nokukhuluma okufundiswe emasontweni amabili, kumele kuthathelwe ohlotsheni lwamatheksthi azokhiqizwa. Isib. Ukufundisa indaba elandisayo, abafundi kumele bafundiswe ukusebenzisa amagama aguqukayo akhomba imbangela nomthelela noma ukulandelana kwezehlakalo.



## 3.5.1 IBANGA LE-10: UHLELO LOKUFUNDISA

IBANGA LE-10 ITHEMU YOKUQALA			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
1 & 2	<b>Ukulalela Ngokuqondisisa</b> (Ukuthola ulwazi, ukuhlolisisa, ukuncoma futhi uxhumane nabanye) Isikhathi: ihora	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Izimpawu ezigqamile zamatheksthi</b> kanye nezingxenye zencwadi kumbandakanya nemibhalo yobuciko enhlobonhlobo</li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</li> </ul>	<b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Incwadi yobungane/yokucela umsebenzi/ eya kwabezindaba/ ikharikhulamu vithaye kanye nencwadi ehambisana nayo/ umlando kamufi/ i-ajenda kanye namaminithi omhlangano. <b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula <b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4
3 & 4	<b>Inkulumo-mpikiswano:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlunganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> Isikhathi: ihora	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Amasu asetshenziswa ematheksthini abhaliwe Bheka ku – 3.2</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</li> </ul>	<b>Indaba ebhalwayo eyodwa:</b> Elandisayo/echazayo/edaza inkani <b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula <b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4

IBANGA LE-10 ITHEMU YOKUQALA			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
5 & 6	<p><b>Ukulalela ngokuqondisisa</b> (Ukuthola ulwazi, ngokuhlolisisa, ukuncoma kanye nokwenza okuthile) Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Ukuhunyushwa kwamatheksthi abonwayo</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko:</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</li> </ul>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Umbiko/isibuyekezo/indatshana yephephandaba/indatshana yephephabhuku</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>• Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>• Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>• Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>• Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
7 & 8	<p><b>Inkulumo/Ingxoxo:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>• Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlenganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Ukuthuthukiswa kolwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> <li>o Izakhiwo zemisho</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko:</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</li> </ul>	<p><b>Indaba ebhalwayo eyodwa:</b> Elandisayo/echazayo/edaza inkani</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>• Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>• Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>• Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>• Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>

IBANGA LE-10 ITHEMU YOKUQALA			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
9 & 10	<b>Inkulumo elungiselelwe/ nengalungiselelwe:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> Isikhathi: ihora	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ukufingqa</li> <li>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</li> </ul> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4	<b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo / inkulumo/inkulumo-mpendulwano/ i-inthavyu (ebhalwayo)</b> <b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula <b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4

Amathaskhi amiselwe ukuhlolwa			
Ithaskhi yoku-1	Ithaskhi yesi-2	Ithaskhi yesi-3	Ithaskhi yesi-4
<b>Ama-oral:</b> Ukulalela ngokuqondisisa	<b>*Ukubhala:</b> Indaba elandisayo/ echazayo/ edaza inkani	<b>*Ukubhala:</b> Umbhalo odlulisa umyalezo omude	<b>Isivivinyo soku-1:</b> <b>Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Isivivinyo sokuqondisisa</li> <li>Ukufingqa</li> <li>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> </ul>

**\*Ukubhala:** Khetha indaba eyodwa, kanye netheksthi edlulisa umyalezo ngenhloso yokuhlola okumiselwe imigomo ekupheleni kwethemu

IBANGA LE-10 ITHEMU YESIBILI			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
11 & 12	<p><b>Inkulumo-mpendulwano/ i-inthavyu/inkulumo:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> Amasu asetshenziswa ematheksthin abhaliwe</li> </ul> <p>Bheka ingxenye-3.2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b></p> <p>Inkulumo/inkulumo-mpendulwano/ i-inthavyu</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
13 & 14	<p><b>Inkulumo elungiselelwe/ engalungiselelwe:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi (amasu okukhuluma esidlangaleni, izakhiwo kanye nenqubo yokulungiselela) amatheksthi akhethiwe</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufingqa</b></li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Indaba ebhalwayo eyodwa:</b> Elandisayo/echazayo/edaza inkani</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>

IBANGA LE-10 ITHEMU YESIBILI			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
15 & 16	<p><b>Ingxoxo engamiselwe migomo/ Ukuxoxa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi• Ukusetshenziswa kwezimiso zolimi</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukuhunyushwa kwemifanekiso/izithombe</b> Isib. Izikhangiso, amakhathuni, izithombe.</li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</li> </ul>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo :</b></p> <p>Incwadi yobungane/ yokucela umsebenzi/ eya kwabezindaba/ ikharikhulamu vithaye kanye nencwadi ehambisana nayo/ umlando kamufi/ i-ajenda kanye namaminithi omhlangano.</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>

IBANGA LE-10 ITHEMU YESIBILI			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
17 & 18	<b>Ingxoxo/ukuxoxisana kwesigungu:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukusebenzisa izimiso zolimi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> Isikhathi: ihora	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ukuthuthukiswa kolwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> <li>Izakhiwo zemisho</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4	<b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Umbiko/ isibuyekezo/indatshana yephephandaba/indatshana yephephabhuku. <b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
19 & 20	Ukuhlela kwaphakathi nonyaka		

Amathaskhi amiselwe ukuhlolwa		
Ithaskhi yesi-5	Ithaskhi yesi-6	Ithaskhi yesi-7
<b>Ama-orali:</b> Inkulumbo elungiselelwe nengalungiselelwe	<b>Imibhalo yobuciko:</b> Imibuzo emifushane Iseeyi yemibhalo wobuciko	<b>Ukuhlela kwaphakathi nonyaka:</b> Iphepha loku-1 – ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo yobuciko Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala (lingabhalwa ngoNhlaba /ngoNhlanguvana)

IBANGA LE-10 ITHEMU YESITHATHU			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
21 & 22	<p><b>Imihlangano kanye nenqubo yemihlangano:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> Amasu asetshenziswa ematheksthini abhaliwe</li> </ul> <p>Bheka ku – 3.2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufunda: imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b></p> <p>Incwadi yobungane/yokucela umsebenzi/ eya kwabezindaba/ ikharikhulamu vithaye kanye nencwadi ehambisana nayo/ umlando kamufi/ i-ajenda kanye namaminithi omhlangano.</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
23 & 24	<p><b>Ukuxoxa indaba:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Ukuthuthukiswa kolwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> <li>o Izakhiwo zemisho</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Indaba ebhalwayo eyodwa:</b> Elandisayo/echazayo/edaza inkani</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>

IBANGA LE-10 ITHEMU YESITHATHU			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
25 & 26	<p><b>Inkulumo elungiselelwe/ engalungiselelwe:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Amasu asetshenziwa ekufundeni amatheksthi abhaliwe: Bheka ku 3.2</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b></p> <p>Inkulumo/Inkulumo-mpendulwano /i-inthavyu</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
27 & 28	<p><b>Inkulumo elungiselelwe/ engalungiselelwe:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufingqa</b></li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Indaba ebhalwayo eyodwa:</b></p> <p>Elandisayo/echazayo/edaza inkani</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>



IBANGA LE-10 ITHEMU YESITHATHU			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
29 & 30	<b>Ukulalelela ukuqondisisa</b> Ukuthola ulwazi, ukuhlolisisa, ukuncoma futhi uxhumane nabanye Isikhathi: ihora	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Amasu asetshenziswa ekufundeni amatheksthi abhaliwe: Bheka ku-3.2</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b>                      Isikhathi : amahora ama-4</li> </ul>	<b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Umbiko/isibuyekezo/indatshana yephephandaba/indatshana yephephabhuku <b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula <b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>• Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>• Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>• Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>• Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4
Amathaskhi okuhlola amiselwe imigomo			
Ithaskhi yesi-8		Ithaskhi yesi-9	
<b>*Ama-orali:</b> Inkulumbo elungiselelwe nengalungiselelwe		<b>Isivivinyo sesi-2 Imibhalo yobuciko:</b> Imibuzo emifushane ne-eseyi	

IBANGA LE-10 ITHEMU YESINE			
	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
31 & 32	<p><b>Ukwethula isikhulumi sosuku/ amazwi okubonga:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthii</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ukuhunyushwa kwamatheksthi abonwayo</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Incwadi yobungane/yokucela umsebenzi/ eya kwabezindaba/ ikharikhulamu vithaye kanye nencwadi ehambisana nayo/ umlando kamufi/ i-ajenda kanye namaminithi omhlangano.</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
33 & 34	<p><b>Ingxoxo yesigungu:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukusetshenziswa kwezimiso zolimi</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ukuthuthukiswa kolwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> <li>Izakhiwo zemisho</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko:</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Indaba ebhalwayo eyodwa:</b> Elandisayo/echazayo/edaza inkani</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>

IBANGA LE-10 ITHEMU YESINE			
	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
35 & 36	<b>Ingxoxo yesigungu:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukusetshenziswa kwezimiso zolimi</li> </ul> Isikhathi: ihora	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ukufingqa</li> <li>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</li> </ul> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4	<b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Umbiko/isibuyekezo/indatshana yephephandaba/indatshana yephephabhuku <b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula <b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4
37 & 38	<b>Ingxoxo yaphambi kwabantu/ingxoxo yamaqembu/ingxoxo yesigungu:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukusetshenziswa kwezimiso zolimi</li> </ul> Isikhathi: ihora	<b>Ukulungiselela ukuhlola kokuphela konyaka</b> <b>Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Isifundo sokuqondisa</li> <li>Ukufingqa</li> <li>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> </ul> <b>Imibhalo:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Inoveli/ubuciko bomlomo</li> <li>Umdlalo</li> <li>Izinkondlo</li> </ul>	<b>Ukulungiselela izivivinyo zokuphela konyaka</b> <b>Ukubhala nokwethula:</b> Ama-eseyi Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo <b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula <b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4i
39 & 40	Ukuhlola kokuphela konyaka		

Amathaskhi okuhlola amiselwe imigomo	
Ithaskhi ye-10	Ithaskhi ye-11
<b>Ama-oral:</b> inkulumo elungiselelwe/ukwethula isikhulumi/amazwi okubonga	<b>Ukuhlola kokuphela konyaka:</b> Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo yobuciko Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala Iphepha lesi-4 – Ama-oral

## 3.5.2 IBANGA LESHUMI NANYE: UHLELO LOKUFUNDISA

IBANGA LE-11 ITHEMU YOKUQALA			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
1 & 2	<p><b>Ukulalelela ukuqondosisa</b> (Ukuthola ulwazi, ukuhlolisisa, ukuncoma futhi uxhumane nabanye) Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Izimpawu zamatheksthi</b> nezingxenye ezithile zemibhalo yobuciko enhlobonhlobo</li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</li> </ul>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imilayezo:</b> Incwadi yobungane/yokucela umsebenzi/ eya kwabezindaba/ ikharikhulamu vithaye kanye nencwadi ehambisana nayo/ umlando kamufi/ i-ajenda kanye namaminithi omhlangano.</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
3 & 4	<p><b>Inkulumo-mpikiswano:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlenganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondosisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Amasu asetshenziswa ematheksthini abhaliwe: Bheka ku-3.2</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b> Isikhathi amahora ama-4</li> </ul>	<p><b>Indaba ebhalwayo eyodwa:</b> eqhathanisayo/eningayo/edaza inkani</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>

IBANGA LE-11 ITHEMU YOKUQALA			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
5 & 6	<p><b>Ukulalelela ukuqondisisa</b> (Ukuthola ulwazi, ukuhlolisisa, ukuncoma futhi uxhumane nabanye) Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<p>• <b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Ukuthuthukiswa kolwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> <li>o Izakhiwo zemisho</li> </ul> <p>• <b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Umbiko/isibuyekezo/indatshana yephephandaba/indatshana yephephabhuku</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>• Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>• Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>• Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>• Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
7 & 8	<p><b>Inkulumo elungiselelwe/ engalungiselelwe:</b> amasu okukhuluma phambi kwabantu, izakhiwo kanye nohlelo lokulungiselela</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>• Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<p>• <b>Ukuhunyushwa kwamatheksthi abonwayo</b> (isib. Izikhangiso, amakhathuni, izithombe)</p> <p>• <b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Inkulumo/inkulumo-mpendulwano/ i-inthavyu</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>• Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>• Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>• Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>• Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>

IBANGA LE-11 ITHEMU YOKUQALA			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
9 & 10	<p><b>Inkulumo elungiselelwe/engalungiselelwe:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ukufingqa</li> <li>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b></p> <p>Inkulumo/inkulumo-mpendulwano/i-inthavyu</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>

Amathaskhi amiselwe ukuhlolwa			
Ithaskhi yoku-1	Ithaskhi yesi-2	Ithaskhi yesi-3	Ithaskhi yesi-4
<p><b>Ama-orali:</b></p> <p>Ukulalela ngokuqondisisa</p>	<p><b>Ukubhala:</b></p> <p>Indaba elandisayo/indaba echazayo/indaba edaza inkani</p>	<p><b>Ukubhala:</b></p> <p>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo</p>	<p><b>Isivivinyo soku-1:</b></p> <p><b>Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Isivivinyo sokuqondisisa</li> <li>Ukufingqa</li> <li>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> </ul>

**\*Ukubhala:** Khetha indaba eyodwa, netheksthi eyodwa eyedlulisa umyalezo ngenhloso yokuhlola kokuphela kwethemu okumiselwe imigomo.

IBANGA LE-11 ITHEMU YESIBILI			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
11 & 12	<p><b>Inkulumo-mpendulwano i- inthavyu/ingxoxo/ ukuxoxisana:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ukuthuthukiswa kolwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> <li>Izakhiwo zemisho</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b></p> <p>Inkulumo/Inkulumo-mpendulwano / i-inthavyu</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
13 & 14	<p><b>Inkulumo elungiselelwe/ engalungiselelwe:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufingqa</b></li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Indaba ebhalwayo eyodwa:</b></p> <p>eningayo/eqhathanisayo/edaza inkani</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>



IBANGA LE-11 ITHEMU YESIBILI			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
15 & 16	<p><b>Ingxoxo yesigungu:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukusebenzisa izimiso zolimi engxoxweni</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukukhunyushwa kwamatheksthi abonwayo</b> isib. izikhangiso amakhathuni, izithombe</li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Umbiko/isibuyekezo/indatshana yephephandaba/indatshana yephephabhuku</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
17 & 18	<p><b>Ingxoxo ezingabekelwa migomo/ Ukuxoxisana</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukusetshenziswa kwezimiso zolimi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlenganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Amasu asetshenziswa ematheksthini abhaliwe: Bheka ku- 3.2</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Inkulumbo/Inkulumbo-mpendulwano/ i-inthavyu</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
19 & 20	Ukuhlola kwaphakathi nonyaka		

Amathaskhi okuhlola amiselwe imigomo		
Ithaskhi yesi-5	Ithaskhi yesi- 6	Ithaskhi yesi- 7
<b>Ama-orali:</b> Inkulumo elungiselelwe/ engalungiselwe	<b>Imibhalo yobuciko:</b> Imibuzo emifushane I-ESEYI	Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo yobuciko Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala (kungabhalwa ngoNhlaba/ ngoNhlanguvana)

IBANGA LE-11 ITHEMU YESITHATHU			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
21 & 22	<p><b>Imihlangano kanye nenqubo yemihlangano</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ukuthuthukiswa kolwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> <li>Izakhiwo zemisho</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b></p> <p>Incwadi yobungane/yokucela umsebenzi/ eya kwabezindaba/ ikharikhulamu vithaye kanye nencwadi ehambisana nayo/ umlando kamufi/ i-ajenda kanye namaminithi omhlangano.</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
23 & 24	<p><b>Ukuxoxa indaba kanye/noma izibongo/izihasho</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> sebenzisa amatheksthi abhaliwe: Bheka ku-3.2</li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Indaba ebhalwayo eyodwa:</b> eningayo/eqhathanisayo/edaza inkani</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>

IBANGA LE-11 ITHEMU YESITHATHU			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
25 & 26	<p><b>Inkulumo elungiselelwe/engalungiselelwe:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ukuthuthukiswa kolwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> <li>Izakhiwo zemisho</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Inkulumo/Inkulumo-mpendulwano/i-inthavyu</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
27 & 28	<p><b>Inkulumo elungiselelwe/engalungiselelwe:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufingqa</b></li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Inkulumo/Inkulumo-mpendulwano/i-inthavyu</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>

IBANGA LE-11 ITHEMU YESITHATHU			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
29 & 30	<p><b>Ukulalelela ukuqondisisa:</b> (Ukuthola ulwazi, ngokuhlolisisa, ukuncoma kanye nokwenza okuthile) Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<p>• <b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> o Amasu asetshenziswa ematheksthini abonwayo: Bheka ku-3.2</p> <p>• <b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Indaba ebhalwayo eyodwa:</b> eningayo/eqhathanisayo/edaza inkani</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>• Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>• Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>• Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>• Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
Amathaskhi okuhlola amiselwe imigomo			
Ithaskhi yesi-8		Ithaskhi yesi-9	
<b>Ama-orali:</b> Inkulumbo elungiselelwe/engalungiselelwe		<p><b>Imibhalo yobuciko:</b> Isivivinyo sesi-2; imibuzo emifushane kanye ne-eseyi</p>	

IBANGA LE-11 ITHEMU YESINE			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
31 & 32	<p><b>Ukwethula isikhulumi sosuku/ amazwi okubonga:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Amasu asetshenziswa ematheksthini abonwayo. Bheka ku-3.2</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Indaba ebhalwayo eyodwa:</b> eningayo/eqhathanisayo/edaza inkani</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
33 & 34	<p><b>Ingxoxo engamiselwe migomo/ ukuxoxisana:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukusetshenziswa kwezimiso zolimi</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ukuthuthukiswa kolwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> <li>Izakhiwo zemisho</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b></p> <p>Incwadi yobungane/yokucela umsebenzi/ eya kwabezindaba/ ikharikhulamu vithaye kanye nencwadi ehambisana nayo/ umlando kamufi/ i-ajenda kanye namaminithi omhlangano.</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>

IBANGA LE-11 ITHEMU YESINE			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
35 & 36	<p><b>Inkulumo-mpikiswano/ nengxoxo yesigungu:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ukufingqa</li> <li>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezi:</b> Umbiko/isibuyekezo/indatshana yephephandaba/indatshana yephephabhuku.</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
37 & 38	<p><b>Umbiko/isibuyekezo:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<p><b>Ukulungiselela izivivinyo zokuphela konyaka</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Uhlelo kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Isifundo sokuqondisa</li> <li>Ukufingqa</li> <li>Ukusetshenziswa kolimi kuhambisana nesimo</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Imibhalo:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Inoveli/ubuciko bomlomo</li> <li>Umdlalo</li> <li>Izinkondlo</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Ukulungiselela izivivinyo zokuphela konyaka</b> <b>Ukubhala nokwethula:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ama-eseyi</li> <li>Amatheksthi adlulisa umyalezo</li> </ul> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
39 & 40	Ukuhlola kokuphela konyaka		

Amathaskhi okuhlola amiselwe imigomo	
Ithaskhi ye-10	Ithaskhi ye-11
<b>Ama-orali:</b> Inkulumo elungiselwe- Umbiko/isibuyekezo	<b>Izivivinyo zokuphela konyaka:</b> Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo yobuciko Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala Iphepha lesi-4 – Ama-orali



## 3.5.3 IBANGA LE-12: UHLELO LOKUFUNDISA

IBANGA LE-12 ITHEMU YOKUQALA			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
1 & 2	<p><b>Ukulalelela ukuqondisisa</b> (Ukuthola ulwazi, ukuhlolisisa, ukuncoma futhi uxhumane nabanye) Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Izimpawu ezibalulekile zemibhalo</b> nezingxenye ezithile zencwadi kumbandakanye nemibhalo enhlobonhlobo</li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</li> </ul>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo</b> Incwadi yobungane/yokucela umsebenzi/ eya kwabezindaba/ ikharikhulamu vithaye kanye nencwadi ehambisana nayo/ umlando kamufi/ i-ajenda kanye namaminithi omhlangano.</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
3 & 4	<p><b>Ingxoxo/ Inkulumbo-mpendulwano/ umbiko/isibuyekezo:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Amasu asetshenziswa ematheksthini abhaliwe: Bheka ku-3.2</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</li> </ul>	<p><b>Indaba ebhalwayo eyodwa:</b> eningayo/elandisayo/edaza inkani/ eqhathanisayo/ echazayo</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>

IBANGA LE-12 ITHEMU YOKUQALA			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
5 & 6	<p><b>Ukulalelela ukuqondisisa</b> (Ukuthola ulwazi, ukuhlolisisa, ukuncoma futhi uxhumane nabanye) Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<p>• <b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Ukuthuthukiswa kolwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> <li>o Izakhiwo zemishoi</li> </ul> <p><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Umbiko/isibuyekezo/izindatshana zamaphephandaba/izindatshana zamaphephabhuku</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>• Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>• Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>• Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>• Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
7 & 8	<p><b>Inkulumo elungiselelwe/ engalungiselelwe:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi (amasu okukhuluma phambi kwabantu isakhiwo kanye nenqubo yokulungiselela)</li> <li>• Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlenganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<p>• <b>Ukukhunyushwa kwemifanekiso/izithombe</b> Isib. izikhangiso amakhathuni, izithombe</p> <p>• <b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Umbhalo odlulisa umyalezo:</b> Incwadi yobungane/yokucela umsebenzi/ eya kwabezindaba/ ikharikhulamu vithaye kanye nencwadi ehambisana nayo/ incwadi yokukhononda/ yoku-oda/inkulumo-mpendulwano/ izibuyekezo/ imibiko ebekelwe imigomo nengabekelwe migomo.</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>• Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>• Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>• Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>• Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>

IBANGA LE-12 ITHEMU YOKUQALA			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
9 & 10	<b>Inkulumo elungiselelwe/ engalungiselelwe</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlanganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> Isikhathi: ihora	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ukufingqa</li> <li>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</li> </ul> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4	<b>Indaba ebhalwayo eyodwa:</b> eningayo/elandisayo/edaza inkani/ eqhathanisayo /echazayo <b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula <b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4

Amathaskhi okuhlola amiselwe imigomo				
Ithaskhi yoku-1	Ithaskhi yesi-2	Ithaskhi yesi-3	Ithaskhi yesi- 4	Ithaskhi yesi- 5
<b>Ama-oral:</b> Isivivinyo sokulalelela ukuqondisa	<b>*Ukubhala:</b> Indaba	<b>*Ukubhala:</b> amatheksthi edlulisa imiyalezo	<b>Ama-oral:</b> inkulomo elungiselelwe/ engalungiselelwe	<b>Isivivinyo soku-1:</b> <b>Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Isivivinyo sokuqondisa</li> <li>Ukufingqa</li> </ul> Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi

**\*Ukubhala:** Khetha indaba eyodwa, netheksthi eyodwa eyedlulisa umyalezo ngenhloso yokuhlola kokuphela kwethemu okumiselwe imigomo.

IBANGA LE-12 ITHEMU YESIBILI			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
11 & 12	<p><b>Inkulumo-mpendulwano/i-inthavyu/izimpawu nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlenganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Amasu asetshenziswa ematheksthini abhaliwe: Bheka ku 3.2</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Itheksthi edlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Inkulumo/Inkulumo-mpendulwano/i-inthavyu</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
13 & 14	<p><b>Inkulumo-mpikiswano/ingxoxo yenkundla/ingxoxo yamaqembu/ingxoxo yesigungu/</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlenganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufingqa</b></li> <li><b>Imibhalo yobuciko:</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Indaba ebhalwayo eyodwa:</b> Edaza inkani/eyethula amaqiniso/eningayo/elandisayo/echazayo/ejeqeza emuva</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>

IBANGA LE-12 ITHEMU YESIBILI			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
15 & 16	<p><b>Ingxoxo/ ukuxoxisana okungamiselwe migomo:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthii</li> <li>Ukusebenzisa izimiso zolimi</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukuhunyushwa kwamatheksthii abonwayo</b> isib. Izikhangiso, amakhathuni, Isithombe</li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthii adlulisa umyalezo</b></p> <p>Incwadi yobungane/yokucela umsebenzi/ eya kwabezindaba/ ikharikhulamu vithaye kanye nencwadi ehambisana nayo/ umlando kamufi/ i-ajenda kanye namaminithi omhlangano.</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthii akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
17 & 18	<p><b>Inkulumo elungiselelwe/ engalungiselelwe:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthii</li> <li>Ukuhlela, ukucwaninga, ukuhlenganisa ngesu elithile, ukuzilolonga kanye nokwethula</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ukuthuthukiswa kolwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> <li>Izakhiwo zemisho</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthii adlulisa imiyalezo:</b></p> <p>Inkulumo/Inkulumo-mpendulwano/ Inhlolokhono/i-inthavuyi</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthii akhethiwe</b></p> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
19 & 20	Ukuhlola kwaphakathi nonyaka		

Amathaskhi okuhlola amiselwe imigomo		
Ithaskhi yesi-6	Ithaskhi yesi-7	Ithaskhi yesi-8
<b>Imibhalo yobuciko:</b> Imibuzo: emifushane kanye ne-eseyi	<b>Ama-orali:</b> Inkulumo elungiselelwe / engalungiselelwe	<b>Ukuhlola kwaphakathi nonyaka</b> Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo yobuciko Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala Iphepha lesi-4 – Ama-orali Noma Isivivinyo esibhalwayo

**Ukuhlolwa kwaphakathi nonyaka:** EBangeni le-12 ithaskhi eyodwa ethemini yokuqala kanye/noma yesithathu kumele kube wukuhlola kwangaphakathi. Ezimweni lapho kukunye ukuhlolwa kwangaphakathi eBangeni le-12, isivivinyo kumele singene endaweni yokunye ukuhlola ekupheleni kwethemu (ithaskhi yesi-8 nethaskhi ye-10).

IBANGA LE-12 ITHEMU YESITHATHU			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
21 & 22	<p><b>Ingxoxo /ukuxoxisana okungabekelwe migomo:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukusetshenziswa kwezimiso zolimi</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Amasu asetshenziswa ematheksthini abhaliwe: Bheka ku-3.2</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Umbiko/isibuyekezo/indatshana yephephandaba/indatshana yephephabhuku</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>
23 & 24	<p><b>Ukwethula isikhulumi/amazwi okubonga:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izimpawu kanye nezimiso zetheksthi</li> <li>Ukusetshenziswa kwezimiso zolimi</li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: ihora</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:</b> Ukuhunyushwa kwamatheksthi abonwayo</li> <li><b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b></li> </ul> <p>Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>	<p><b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Inkulumo/inkulumo-mpendulwano/i-inthavyu</p> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4</p>

IBANGA LE-12 ITHEMU YESITHATHU			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
25 & 26	Ukumodereyithwa kwama-oral	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ukufingqa</li> <li>• Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</li> </ul> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4	<b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Incwadi yobungane/yokucela umsebenzi/ eya kwabezindaba/ ikharikhulamu vithaye kanye nencwadi ehambisana nayo/ umlando kamufi/ i-ajenda kanye namaminithi omhlangano. <b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula <b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>• Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>• Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>• Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>• Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4
27 & 28	Ukumodereyithwa kwama-oral Isikhathi: ihora	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ukufundela ukuqondisisa:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Ukuthuthukiswa kolwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> <li>o Izakhiwo zemisho</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <b>Ukufunda imibhalo yobuciko</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4	<b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Umbiko/isibuyekezo/indatshana yephephandaba/indatshana yephephabhuku <b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b> <b>Inqubo yokubhala</b> Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula <b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>• Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>• Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>• Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>• Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b> Isikhathi: amahora ama-4
29 & 30	Ukusingakuhlola		



Amathaskhi okuhlola amiselwe imigomo	
Ithaskhi yesi-9	Ithaskhi yesi-10
<b>Ama-orali:</b> Inkulumo elungiselwe/ukwethula isikhulumi/amazwi okubonga	<b>*Ukusingakuhlola</b> Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo yobuciko Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala (kungabhalwa ngoNcwaba ukuya kuMandulo) Iphepha lesi-4 – Ama-orali Noma Isivivinyo esibhalwayo

**\*Ukusingakuhlola:** EBangeni le-12 ithaskhi eyodwa ethemini yokuqala kanye/noma yesithathu kumele kube wukuhlola kwangaphakathi. Ezimweni lapho kukunye ukuhlolwa kwangaphakathi eBangeni le-12, isivivinyo kumele singene endaweni yokunye ukuhlola ekupheleni kwethemu (ithaskhi yesi-8 nethaskhi ye-10).

IBANGA LE-12 ITHEMU YESINE			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
31 & 32	Ukumodereytha kwama-oral	<p>Kucijwa abafundi ngokusebenzisa imibuzo yamaphepha okuhlola amadala amayelana nokuhlolwa kolimi ezimweni ezithize nemibhalo kubhekiswe kulokhu:</p> <p>Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile- Isifundo sokuqondisisa,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Isifundo sokuqondisisa</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Ukufingqa</li> <li>o Uhlelo nokusetshenziswa kolimi kuhambisana nesimo</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Imibhalo yobuciko:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Inoveli/ubuciko bomlomo</li> <li>o Umdlalo</li> <li>o Izinkondlo</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>Kucijwa abafundi ngokusebenzisa amaphepha okuhlola amadala:</p> <p><b>Ukubhala:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Izindaba</li> <li>• Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo</li> </ul> <p><b>Gxila kulokhu okulandelayo:</b></p> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>• Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>• Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>• Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>• Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p>
33 & 34	Ukumodereytha kwama-oral	<p>Kucijwa abafundi ngokusebenzisa imibuzo yamaphepha okuhlola amadala kubhekwe lokhu:</p> <p><b>Uhlelo nokusetshenziswa kolimi:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Isifundo sokuqondisisa</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Ukufingqa</li> <li>o Uhlelo nokusetshenziswa kolimi kuhambisana nesimo</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Imibhalo:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Inoveli/ubuciko bomlomo</li> <li>o Umdlalo</li> <li>o Izinkondlo</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>Kucijwa abafundi ngokusebenzisa amaphepha okuhlola amadala maqondana nalokhu:</p> <p><b>Ukubhala:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Izindaba</li> <li>• Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo</li> </ul> <p><b>Inqubo yokubhala</b></p> <p>Ukuhlela, ukubhala izinhloko zokuqala, ukubuyekeza, ukufundisa ukuze ucacise, ukulungisa amaphutha, kanye nokwethula</p> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi ngesikhathi kubhalwa:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Irejista, isitayela kanye nezwi</li> <li>• Ukukhethwa kwamagama</li> <li>• Ukwakhiwa kwemisho</li> <li>• Ukubhalwa kwezigaba</li> <li>• Izimpawu zokuloba nesipelingi</li> </ul> <p><b>Izakhiwo nezimpawu zamatheksthi akhethiwe</b></p>
35 & 36	Ukuhlola kokuphela konyaka		

IBANGA LE-12 ITHEMU YESINE			
Amasonto	Ukulalela nokukhuluma	Ukufunda nokubukela	Ukubhala nokwethula
37 & 38	Ukuhlola kokuphela konyaka		
39 & 40	Ukuhlola kokuphela konyaka		
	Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo yobuciko Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala Iphepha lesi-4 – Ama-orali		

## ISIGABA SESI-4: UKUHLOLA OLIMINI LWASEKHAYA

### 4.1 Isingeniso

Ukuhlola kuwuhlelo oluqhubekayo enqubeni yokuhlonza, yokuqoqa, yokuhumusha ulwazi lokuthi abafundi basebenze kanjani, kusetshenziswa izindlela ezehlukene zokuhlola. Kufaka amazinga amane: ukwakha nokuqoqa ubufakazi bomphumela, ukulinganisa lobu bufakazi, ukurekhoda okutholakele kanye nokusebenzisa lolu lwazi ukuqonda nokukwazi ukwelekelela ukuthuthuka komfundi ukuze kwenziwe ngcono inqubo yokufunda nokufundisa.

Ukuhlola kumele kube mbaxambili, okungamiselwe migomo (ukuhlola ulungiselela ukufunda) nokumiselwe imigomo (ukuhlola okufundiwe). Kukho kokubili lokhu kuhlola kubalulekile ukuba abafundi baziswe indlela abenze ngayo ekuhlolweni kwabo ukuze kwengezwe ulwazi ekufundeni.

Ukuhlola amakhono olimi kumele kudidiyelwe. Ukuhlolwa kwesifundo sokuqondisisa kumele kuyamaniswe nokusetshenziswa kolimi. Ukuhlolwa kokubhala kumele kumbandakanye izinto ezithinta isimo okuphilwa kuso.

### 4.2 Ukuhlolwa okungamiselwe migomo noma ukuhlola kwansuku zonke

Ukuhlelela ukufunda kunenjongo yokuqoqa ulwazi lokuthuthuka kwabafundi olungasetshenziswa ekuthuthukiseni ukufunda.

Ukuhlolwa okungamiselwe migomo kuwukuqaphela kwansukuzonke inqubekela phambili yabafundi. Lokhu kwenzeka ngokuthi kubhekwe, kukhulunywe, kubonakaliswe ngokwenza, ukubonisana phakathi kukathisha nomfundi, nokuxhumana kwasekilasini okungamiselwe migomo, njll. Ukuhlola okungamiselwe migomo kwenziwa kube sobala ngangokuba uthisha uyakwazi ukumisa abafundi maphakathi nokufunda axoxe nabo ebhekise enqubekeleni phambili yokufunda kwabo. Ukuhlola okungamiselwe migomo kumele kusetshenziswe ukubonisa abafundi indlela abenze ngayo nokwazisa indlela ukufundisa okumele kuhlelwe ngayo, kodwa akuphoqelekile ukuba kurekhodwe. Kumele kungahlukaniswa nemisebenzi yokufunda eyenzeka ekilasini. Abafundi kumbe othisha bangawamaka la mathaskhi okuhlola.

Ukuzihlola nokuhlolana kontanga kwenza abafundi bazimbandakanye ekuhloleni. Lokhu kubalulekile ngoba kwenza abafundi bafunde babuye bazibheke bona ukusebenza kwabo. Ukuhlola okungamiselwe migomo kwansukuzonke akuphoqelekile ukuthi kurekhodwe ngaphandle uma uthisha ezithandela yena. Imiphumela etholakala ekuhlolweni okungamiselwe migomo kwansukuzonke akumele isetshenziswe ekubhekeni ukuthi umfundi uyadlulela yini ebangeni elilandelayo nangenhloso yokukhipha izitifiketi.

### 4.3 Ukuhlola okumiselwe imigomo

Wonke amathaskhi okuhlola enza uHlelo lokuHlola olumiselwe imigomo ngonyaka athathwa njengokuhlola okumiselwe imigomo. Amathaskhi okuhlola amiselwe imigomo amakwa uthisha awarekhode ukuze kubonakale ukuthi umfundi uyaqhubekela yini ebangeni elilandelayo kanye nokukhipha izitifiketi. Wonke amathaskhi okuhlolwa amiselwe imigomo kumele amodareyithwe ukuze kuqinisekiswa ukuba sezingeni nanokuthi akulungele yini ukubhalwa. Nakuba ukulungiselela ithaski ezobhalwa kungenzeka ngaphandle kwasekilasini, ukubhala umkhiqizo wokugcina wona kumele ubhalwe kuqashelwe ekilasini.

Ukuhlola okumiselwe imigomo kunikeza uthisha amasu okubheka nokulinganisa ukuthuthuka kwabafundi ebangeni nasesifundweni. Izibonelo zokuhlola okumiselwe imigomo kubala, izivivinyo, ukuhlola, amathaskhi okwenza, amaprojekthi, okwethulwa ngomlomo, ukubonisa, ukulinganisa, njll. Amathaskhi okuhlola amiselwe imigomo ayingxenye yoHlelo lokuHlola loNyaka wonke eBangeni ngalinye kanye nasesifundweni.

Leli thebula elilandelayo linikeza okudingekayo ekuhlolweni okumiselwe imigomo oLimini lwaseKhaya:

**Ithebula loku-1: Ukuhlolwa okumiselwe imigomo kweBanga le-10 nele-11 ngamafuphi**

Ukuhlolwa okumiselwe imigomo		
Phakathi nonyaka	Ukuhlola kokuphela konyaka	
25%	75%	
Ukuhlolwa kwangaphakathi esikoleni (SBA)-	Amaphepha okuhlolwa kokuphela konyaka	
25%	62. 5%	12. 5%
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Izivivinyo ezi-2</li> <li>Amathaskhi ayisi-7</li> <li>Ukuhlola kwaphakathi nonyaka oku- 1</li> </ul>	<b>Ukuhlolwa okubhalwayo</b> Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile (Amahora ama-2) Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo IBanga le-10 (Amahora ama-2) IBanga le-11 (Amahora ama-2½) Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala IBanga le-10 (Amahora ama-2) IBanga le-11 (Amahora ama-2½)	<b>Ukuhlolwa kwamathaskhi ama-orali: Iphepha lesi-4</b> Ukulalela Inkulumo (okulungiselelwe nokungalungiselelwe) Amathaskhi ama-orali enziwa phakathi nonyaka abalelwa emamakini okuhlolwa kokuphela konyaka kwangaphakathi.

**Ithebula lesi-2: Ukuhlolwa okumiselwe imigomo kweBanga le-12 ngamafuphi**

Ukuhlolwa okumiselwe imigomo		
Phakathi nonyaka	Ukuhlolwa kokuphela konyaka	
25%	75%	
Ukuhlolwa kwangaphakathi esikoleni (SBA)	Amaphepha okuhlolwa kokuphela konyaka	
25%	62.5%	12.5%
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Isivivinyo soku-1</li> <li>Amathaskhi ayi-7</li> <li>Ukuhlolwa oku-2 (okwaphakathi nonyaka/isivivinyo kanye nokusingakuhlola/isivivinyo)</li> </ul>	<b>Ukuhlolwa okubhalwayo</b> Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile (Amahora ama-2) Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo (Amahora ama-2½) Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala (Amahora ama-2½)	<b>Ukuhlolwa kwamathaskhi ama-orali: Iphepha lesi-4</b> Ukulalela Inkulumo (okulungiselelwe nokungalungiselelwe) Amathaskhi ama-orali enziwa phakathi nonyaka abalelwa emamakini okuhlolwa kokuphela konyaka kwangaphakathi.

Izindlela zokuhlola kumele zibhekelele iminyaka kanye nokuthuthuka kwamazinga ngendlela efanele. Ukuhleleka kanye nokwendleleka kwalokhu kuhlola kumele kukuthinte konke okuqukethwe esifundweni kuxutshwe amathaskhi anhlobonhlobo ukukwazi ukufeza injongongqangi yesifundo.



Amazinga obulukhuni bemibuzo	Umsebenzi	Amaphesenti amathaskhi
Ukuhlolisisa (Izinga lesi-4)	<p>Le mibuzo imayelana nezinqumo ezithinta ubugugu nokunohlonze. Lokhu kufaka izinqumo mayelana nokuqinisekisa ubukhona bento, iqiniso nombono, nokukholeka, ukukwazi ukucabanga nokuqonda, ukuphikisana, kanye nezinto ezifana nokuthandeka, nokwamukeleka kwezinqumo nezenzo nokwaziswayo emphakathini:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Ucabanga ukuthi lokhu okwenzekile kuyakholeka/kungenzeka?</li><li>• Umbono ovezwa umbhali ngabe unobuqiniso/ukucabanga nokuhluzeka/nomnqamula juqu.</li><li>• Phawula ngokuhlolisisa ngesenzo/inhloso/imbangela/indlela okubonwa ngayo izinto/ukuphakamisa/isiqondiso.</li><li>• Uyavumelana nombono /isititimende/okubonile/ukuhumusha...?</li><li>• Ngokwakho ukubona, ngabe umbhali/umlandi /umlingiswa ufanele yini ukubeka umbono /ukuphakamisa lokhu? (sekela impendulo yakho/nikeza isizathu sempendulo yakho).</li><li>• Ngabe ukuziphatha/ukwenza izinto ngendlela enza ngayo umlingiswa ifanele yini/kwamukelekile kuwena? Nikeza isizathu sempendulo yakho.</li><li>• Ngabe izenzo zomlingiswa/indlela enza ngayo izinto/isisusa kumveza ngokwesimo esamukelekile ngokwamagugu?</li><li>• Xoxa ngokucophelela/phawula ngokwezinqumo zamagugu ezitholakala etheksthini.</li></ul>	Izinga lesi-4 nelesi-5: 20%
Ukuncoma (Izinga lesi-5)	<p>Le mibuzo ihlose ukuhlola umthelela wokomqondo nokokuncoma ltheke sthi kohlolewayo. Kugxilwa kakhulu endleleni aphenula ngayo ebheka ukuphakama komoya ngokuqokethwe, ukukhonjwa kwabalingiswa noma izehlakalo nendlela aphenula ngayo ekusetshenzisweni kolimi ngumbhali (njengokukhethwa kwamagama nemifanekisomqondo)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Xoxa ngempendulo yakho uyibhekise etheksthini/isehlakalo/ isimo/udweshu/ungqinetshe.</li><li>• Uyazwelana nomlingiswa? Yikuphi ongakwenza uma ungahle ubhekane nalezi simo?</li><li>• Phawula ngolimi olusetshenziswa ngumbhali.</li><li>• Xoxa ngokuphumelela kwesitayela sombhali/isingeniso/isiphetho/ imifanekisomqondo/ukusetshenziswa kwamasu obunkondlo/ amasu emibhalo.</li></ul>	

#### 4.4 UHlelo lokuHlola

UHlelo lokuHlola lwakhelwe ukuchaza amathaskhi amiselwe imigomo ukuhlola kuzo zonke izifundo ethemini yonke.

##### 4.4.1 Ukubuka izidingo ngamafuphi

La mathebula alandelayo abukisa ngeso elibanzi izidingo zohlelo lokuhlola ethemini ngayinye esiZulwini uLimi lwaseKhaya:

##### Ithebula loku-1: Izidingo zoHlelo lokuHlola lweBanga le-10 nele-11 ngamafuphi

UHlelo lokuHlola			
Ukuhlola kwangaphakathi esikoleni kwethemu ngayinye			
Ithemu yoku-1:	Ithemu yesi-2:	Ithemu yesi-3:	Ithemu yesi-4:
Isivivinyo + amathaskhi ama-3	Ithaskhi e-1 + Ukuhlolwa kwaphakathi nonyaka okuqukethe: Amaphepha ama-3 Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo yobuciko Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala	Isivivinyo esi-1 + amathaskhi ama-2	Ithaskhi (i-SBA) + Ukuhlolwa kokuphela konyaka kwangaphakathi okunalokhu: Amaphepha amathathu Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala + Iphepha lesi-4: Ama-orali
<b>Amamaki amathemu (amathemu 1-3):</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ethemini ngayinye, ufaka amamaki njengoba enjalo bese uwaguqulela emaphesentini ukuze kutholakale amamaki ethemu.</li> </ul> <b>Amamaki okwedlulisela abafundi emaBangeni alandelayo:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hlanganisa amamaki enjengoba enjalo kanye nesamba samamaki amathaskhi e- SBA ukusukela ethemini yoku-1 kuya kweyesi-4, bese uwaguqulela emaphesentini angama-25%</li> <li>Guqula iphepha loku-1 libe ngamaphesenti angama-17.5%</li> <li>Guqula iphepha lesi-2 libe ngamaphesenti angama -20%</li> <li>Guqula iphepha lesi-3 libe ngamaphesenti angama -25 %</li> <li>Guqula amamaki ama-orali (iphepha lesi-4) abe ngamaphesenti ayi-12.5%</li> </ul>			



**Ithebula lesi-2: UHlelo lokuHlola IweBanga le-10 nele-11**

<b>UHlelo lokuHlola</b>			
<b>Ithemu yokuqala</b>			
<b>Ithaskhi yoku-1</b>	<b>Ithaskhi yesi-2</b>	<b>Ithaskhi yesi-3</b>	<b>Ithaskhi yesi-4</b>
<b>Ama-oral:</b> Ukulalelela ukuqondisisa (Amamaki ayi-15) Inkulumo elungiselelwe (Amamaki ayi-10)/ Inkulumo engalungiselelwe (Amamaki ayi-15)	<b>Ukubhala: (Amamaki angama-50)</b>  <b>Ama-eseyi:</b> Indaba elandisayo/ echazayo/edaza inkani (eBangeni le-10).  Indaba eningayo/ eqhathanisayo/edaza inkani (eBangeni le-11).	<b>Ukubhala: (Amamaki angama-25)</b>  <b>Amatheksthi adlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Incwadi yobungani/yokucela umsebenzi/ edlulisa izikhalo/ eya kwabezindaba/ ikharikhulamu vithaye kanye nencwadi ehambisana nayo/ incwadi yokukhononda/ yoku-oda/i-ajenda kanye namaminithi omhlangano/ indatshana yephephabhuku/ inkulumo-mpendulwano/ izibuyekezo/imibiko ebekelwe imigomo nengabekelwe migomo/i-inthavyu (inhlolekhono).	<b>* Isivivinyo soku-1 UHlelo nokusetshenziswa kolimi (Amamaki angama-35)</b>  • Isifundo sokuqondisisa o Ukufingqa o Izakhiwo nezimiso zoku setshenziswa kolimi

<b>Ithemu yesibili</b>		
<b>Ithaskhi yesi-5</b>	<b>Ithaskhi yesi-6</b>	<b>Ithaskhi yesi-7</b>
<b>Ama-oral:</b> <b>Ukulalelela ukuqondisisa (Amamaki angama-15)/</b>  Inkulumo elungiselelwe (Amamaki ayi-10) /Inkulumo engalungiselwe (Amamaki angama-15)	<b>Imibhalo yobuciko: (Amamaki angama-35)</b>  Imibuzo emifushane (Amamaki ayi-10) Umbuzo omude (Amamaki angama-25)	<b>Ukuhlolwa kwaphakathi nonyaka: (Amamaki ayi-250)</b>  Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithilei (Amamaki angama-70)  Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo (Amamaki angama-80)  Iphepha lesi-3 – Kungabhalwa ngoNhlaba ukuya kuNhlanguvana (Amamaki-ayi-100)

<b>Ithemu lesithathu</b>	
<b>Ithaskhi yesi-8</b>	<b>Ithaskhi yesi-9</b>
<b>*Ama-oral:</b> Ukulalelela ukuqondisisa (Amamaki ayi-15) / Inkulumo elungiselelwe (Amamaki ayi-10)/ Inkulumo engalungiselelwe (Amamaki ayi-15)	<b>Isivivinyo sesi-2 : (Amamaki angama-35)</b>  Imibhalo Imibuzo emifushane (amamaki ayi-10) Umbuzo omude (Amamaki angama-25)

<b>Ithemu yesine</b>	
<b>Ithaskhi ye-10</b>	<b>Ithaskhi ye-11</b>
<b>*Ama-oral:</b> Ukulalelela ukuqondisisa (Amamaki ayi-15)/ Inkulumo elungiselelwe (Amamaki ayi-10)/ Inkulumo engalungiselelwe (Amamaki ayi-15)	<b>Ukuhlolwa kokuphela konyaka: (Amamaki angama-300)</b>  Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile (Amamaki angama-70)  Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo yobuciko (Amamaki angama-80)  Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala (Amamaki ayi-100)  Iphepha lesi-4 – Ama-oral (Amamaki angama-50)

**\*Ama-oral:** abafundi kumele benze ukulalela ngokuqondisisa oku-1, inkulumo elungiselelwe e-2, inkulumo engalungiselelwe e-1, ekuhlolweni konyaka okumiselwe imigomo

Amamaki **esivivinyo soku-1** kumele kube **ngamamaki angama-35**. Uma engaphezulu kwalokho awaguqulelwe emamakini angama-35. Nanxa *isifundo sokuqondisisa, ukufingqa kanye nohlelo nokusetshenziswa kolimi* kuyiwona mthamo ophakanyisiwe, izikole azifani, ngakho-ke othisha bavumelekile ukwenza okufanela abafundi baleso sikole .isivivinyo sohlelo lokuhlola kumele singenziwa izivivinyo ezincanyana.

Isivivinyo sohlelo lokuhlola kumele singenziwa izivivinyo ezincanyana. Isivivinyo ngasinye kumele siqukathe umthamo owanele wokuqokethwe, sibekelwe imizuzu engama-45-kwayi-60, kanye nokubhekelela amazinga okuhlakanipha njengoba kuvela emaphepheni okuhlola

**Ithebula lesi-3: Izidingo zoHlelo lokuHlola lweBanga le-12 ngamafuphi**

UHlelo lokuHlola			
Ukuhlola kwangaphakathi esikoleni (i-SBA) kwethemu ngayinye			Ukuhlola okuqhamuka ngaphandle
<b>Ithemu yoku-1:</b> Isivivinyo esi-1 + amathaskhi ama-4	<b>Ithemu yesi-2:</b> Amathaskhi ama-2+ ukuhlola kwaphakathi nonyaka okunalokhu: Amaphepha ama-3: Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala NOMA Isivivinyo esibhalwayo	<b>Ithemu yesi-3:</b> Ukusingakuhlola oku-1 okunalawa maphepha: Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala NOMA Isivivinyo + Ithaskhi e-1	<b>Ithemu yesi-4:</b> Ukuhlolwa kokuphela konyaka okuqhamuka ngaphandle: Amaphepha ama-4 Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo Iphepha lesi-3 :– Ukubhala Iphepha lesi-4 – Ama-oral
<p><b>Amamaki ethemu (amathemu 1-3):</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ethemini ngayinye, ufaka amamaki njengoba enjalo bese uwaguqulela e-%, ukuze kutholakale amamaki ethemu yonke.</li> </ul> <p><b>Ukuhlola okwenzelwa esikoleni (i-SBA):</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hlanganisa amamaki enjengoba enjalo kanye nesamba samamaki amathaskhi emathemini omathathu bese uwaguqulela emaphesentini angama-25%.</li> </ul> <p><b>Ukuhlolwa kwangaphandle</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Guqula Iphepha loku-1 libe ngamaphesenti angama-17.5%</li> <li>Guqula Iphepha lesi-2 libe ngamaphesenti angama-20%</li> <li>Guqula Iphepha lesi-3 libe ngamaphesenti angama-25%</li> <li>Guqula amamaki ama-oral (iphepha lesi-4) abe ngamaphesenti ayi-12.5%</li> </ul>			

## Ithebula lesi-4: UHlelo lokuHlola IweBanga le-12

UHlelo lokuHlola				
Ithemu yokuqala				
Ithaskhi yoku-1	Ithaskhi yesi-2	Ithaskhi yesi-3	Ithaskhi yesi-4	Ithaskhi yesi-5
<b>Ama-oral: (Amamaki angama-50)</b>  Isifundo sokulalelela ukuqondisisa (amamaki ayi-15)  Inkulumo elungiselelwe (Amamaki ayi-10)  Inkulumo engalungiselelwe (Amamaki ayi-15)	<b>Ukubhala: (Amamaki angama-50)</b>  Indaba elandisayo/ echazayo/ eqhathanisayo/ eningayo/edaza inkani	<b>Ukubhala: (Amamaki angama-25)</b>  Imibhalo edlulisa imiyalezo:  Incwadi yobungani/ yokucela umsebenzi/ edlulisa izikhalo/ eya kwabezindaba/ ikharikhulamu vithaye kanye nencwadi ehambisana nayo/ incwadi yokukhononda/ yoku-oda/i-ajenda kanye namaminithi omhlangano/ indatshana yephephabhuku/ inkulumo-mpendulwano/ izibuyekezo/imibiko ebekelwe imigomo nengabekelwe migomo/i-inthavyu (inhlokokhono).	<b>Ama-oral: (Amamaki angama-50)</b>  Ukulalela Ukuqondisisa (Amamaki ayi-15)  Inkulumo elungiselelwe (Amamaki ayi-10)  Inkulumo engalungiselelwe (Amamaki ayi-15)	<b>• Isivivinyo soku-1: (Amamaki angama-35)</b>  o Isifundo o Sokuqondisisa o Ukufingqa, o Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi

Ithemu yesibili		
Ithaskhi yesi-6	Ithaskhi yesi-7	Ithaskhi yesi-8
<b>Imibhalo yobuciko: (Amamaki angama-35)</b>  Imibuzo emifushane (Amamaki ayi-10)  Umbuzo omude (Amamaki angamai-25)	<b>• Ama-oral: (Amamaki angama-50)</b> o Isifundo sokulalelela ukuqondisisa (Amamaki ayi-15)/Inkulumo elungiselelwe (Amamaki ayi-10)/ o Inkulumo engalungiselelwe (Amamaki ayi-15)	<b>Ukuhlolwa kwaphakathi nonyaka (Amamaki angama-250)</b>  Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile (Amamaki angama-70)  Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo (Amamaki angama-80)  Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala - kungabhalwa ngoNcwaba/ngoMandulo (Amamaki ayi-100)

Ithemu yesithathu	
Ithaskhi yesi-9	Ithaskhi yesi-10
<b>Ama-oral: (Amamaki angama-50)</b>  Isifundo sokulalela ngokuqondisisa: Amamaki ayi-15) Inkulumo elungiselelwe: [Amamaki angama-20 (2x10)] Inkulumo engalungiselelwe: (Amamaki yi-15)	<b>Ukusingakuhlola (Amamaki angama-250)</b>  Iphepha loku-1 – Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile (amamaki-70)  Iphepha lesi-2 – Imibhalo yobuciko (Amamaki angama-80)  Iphepha lesi-3 – Ukubhala - kungabhalwa ngo-Agasti/ ngoSeptemba (Amamaki ayi-100)  NOMA  Isivivinyo esibhalwayo

**\*Ama- oral:** Abafundi kumele benze ukulalela ngokuqondisisa oku-1, inkulumo elungiselelwe ibe-2, kanye nenkulumo engalungiselelwe e-1 ekuhlolweni konyaka okumiselwe imigomo.

Amamaki **esivivinyo soku-1** kumele kube **ngamamaki angama-35**. Uma engaphezulu kwalokho awaguqululwe emamakini angama-35. Nanxa isifundo sokuqondisisa, ukufingqa kanye nohlelo nokusetshenziswa kolimi kuyiwona mthamo ophakanyisiwe, izikole azifani, ngakho-ke othisha bavumelekile ukwenza okufanela abafundi baleso sikole.

Isivivinyo soHlelo lokuHlola kumele singakhandwa izivivinyo ezincanyana. Isivivinyo ngasinye kumele siqukathe umthamo owanele wokuqokethwe, sibekelwe imizuzu engama-45 kuya kwengama-60, kanye nokubhekelela amazinga okuhlakanipha njengoba kuvela emaphepheni okuhlola.

**\*\*Ukuhlola kwaphakathi nonyaka kanye nokusingakuhlola:** EBangeni le-12, ithaskhi e-1 yethemu yesi-2 kanye/ noma yethemu yesi-4 kumele kube ukuhlola kwangaphakathi. Uma ngabe kubhalwe umsebenzi wokuhlola owodwa kuphela kwemibili ephakanyisiwe, omunye umsebenzi wokuhlola kumele umelwe yisivivinyo ekupheleni kwethemu (ithaskhi yesi-8 kanye neye-10)

#### 4.4.2 Ukuhlola

##### Isimo samaphepha okuhlola- Iphepha loku-1, nelesi-2 kanye nelesi- 3

Iphepha	ISIGABA			AMAMAKI	ISIKHATHI
1. Ukusetshenziswa kolimi ezimeni ezithile	<b>A: Isifundo sokuqondisisa</b> (Kungasebenziswa amatheksthi ehlukeni kuhlanganisa abonwayo nabukelwayo) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Abafundi kumele bakwazi ukubona umthelela wamasu okusetshenziswa kwefonti, uhlobo, ubukhulu/ubuncane, izihloko kanye nezihlokwana, njll.</li> </ul>			30	IBanga le-10 kuya kwele-12:  <i>Amahora ama-2</i>
	AmaBanga		Ubude bamatheksthi		
	10	Amagama angama-340 kuya kwangama-440			
	11	Amagama angama-440 kuya kwangama-500			
	12	Amagama angama-500 kuya kwangama-560			
	<b>B: Ukufingqa:</b> Isiqephu kumele singasuselwa esifundweni sokuqondisisa			10	
	AmaBanga	Ubude betheksthi	Ubude besiqephu esifingqwayo		
	10	Okungenani amagama angama-220	Amagama angama-70 kuya kwanga-80		
	11	Okungenani amagama angam-320			
	12	Okungenani amagama angama-350			
	<b>C: Izakhiwo nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ulwazimagama nokusetshenziswa kolimi</li> <li>Izakhiwo zemisho</li> <li>Ukuhlolisisa indlela ulimi olusetshenziswa ngayo.</li> </ul>			30	

IPHEPHA	ISIGABA		AMAMAKI		ISIKHATHI
2. Imibhalo yobuciko	A: Izinkondlo-eboniwe (imibuzo emifushane ebhekiswe engqikithini/imibuzo emide eyindaba esuselwa ezinkondlweni ezine ezibonwayo(okumele abafundi baphendule emibili kuphela yayo kanye neyodwa engaboniwe (umbuzo omfushane obhekiswe engqikithini) (eboniwe =20; engaboniwe =10)		30	80	IBanga le-10: (amahora ama-2) IBanga-11 kuya kwele-12 (amahora ama-2½ )
	AmaBanga	Ubude be-eseyi yombhalo wobuciko			
		Umbhalo ohlanganisayo			
	10	Amagama angama- 90 kuya kwangama -140			
	11	Amagama angama- 140 kuya kwangama -190			
	12	Amagama angama- 190 kuya kwangama -240			
	Uhlola lokhu okulandelayo kuma-eseyi: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Okuqukethwe (ukuhlaziya isihloko kabanzi, ukuqophisana okujulile, ukwesekela ukuqonda kwakho inkondlo (60%)</li><li>Izakhiwo zolimi (ukuhleleka kokubhaliwe kanye nokwethula, ulimi, iphimbo kanye nesitayela (40%)</li></ul>				
	B: Inoveli/ubuciko bomlomo - imibuzo emide noma emifushane		25		
	C: Umdlalo - Umbuzo omude noma omfushane <u>Qaphela:</u> Abafundi kumele babhale umbuzo owodwa omude kanye nowodwa omfushane esigabeni-B noma esigabeni-C.		25		
	AmaBanga	Ubude bama-eseyi emibhalo yobuciko			
	10	Amagama angama-240 kuya kwangama-290			
	11	Amagama angama-290 kuya kwangama-340			
	12	Amagama angama-340 kuya kwangama-390			
	Emibuzweni emide akubuzwe imibuzo elandayo: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Okuqukethwe (ukuhlaziya isihloko kabanzi,ukuqophisana okujulile, ukwesekela ukuqonda kwakho inkondlo (60%)</li><li>Izakhiwo zolimi (ukuhleleka kokubhaliwe kanye nokwethula, ulimi,iphimbo kanye nesitayela (40%)</li></ul>				

IPHEPHA	ISIGABA		AMAMAKI		ISIKHATHI
3. Ukubhala	<b>A: I-eseyi eyodwa</b> Elandisayo/echazayo/edaza inkani/eningayo/eyethula amaqiniso		50	100	IBanga le-10: amahora ama-2  IBanga le-11 kuya kwele-12 amahora ama-2½
	<b>AmaBanga</b>	<b>Ubude bes-eseyi</b>			
	10	Amagama angama-240 kuya kwangama-290			
	11	Amagama angama-290 kuya kwangama-340			
	12	Amagama angama-340 kuya kwangama-390			
	Akuhlolwe lokhu okulandelayo: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Okuqukethwe kanye nohlaka (60%)</li><li>• Ulimi Amagama angama-, isitayela kanye nokulungisa amaphutha (30%)</li><li>• Isakhiwo (10%)</li></ul>				
	<b>B: Amatheksthi amabili-imibhalo edlulisa imiyalezo:</b> Incwadi yobungani/yokucela umsebenzi/ edlulisa izikhalo/ eya kwabezindaba/ ikharikhulamu vithaye kanye nencwadi ehambisana nayo/ incwadi yokukhononda/ yoku-oda/i-ajenda kanye namaminithi omhlangano/indatshana yephephabhuku/ inkulumo-mpendulwano/ izibuyekezo/imibiko ebekelwe imigomo nengabekelwe migomo/i-inthavyu (inhlokokhono).		50 (2 X 25)		
	<b>AmaBanga</b>	<b>Ubude betheksthi</b>			
	10-12	amagama ayi-100 kuya kwangama-120 (okuqukethwe kuphela)			
	Hlola lokhu okulandelayo: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Okuqukethwe, uhlaka kanye isakhiwo (60%)</li><li>• Ulimi, isitayela kanye nokulungisa amaphutha (40%)</li></ul>				

### Okuqukethwe okumele kufundisiwe

Ukuhlola kuthinta okuqukethwe okumele kufundisiwe ngokukasomqulu. Ngenxa yokukhula kwemibono ngokuqukethwe kuwo wonke amabanga, okuqukethwe kanye namakhono kusuka eBangeni le-10 kuya kwele-12 kuzohlolwa kusetshenziswa amaphepha avela ngaphandle ekupheleni kweBanga le-12.

### Amathaskhi okuhlolwa kwama-orali: Iphepha lesi-4

Amathaskhi okuhlolwa kwama-orali okwenzeka phakathi nonyaka akha ukuhlolwa kweBanga le-12 okuqhamuka ngaphandle. La mamaki aba imiklomelo engama-50 esambeni samamaki angama-300 ekuhlolweni kokuphela konyaka. Imininingwane ephelele ngamathaskhi ama- orali enziwa phakathi nonyaka yile elandelayo:

IPHEPHA LESI-4	IMINININGWANE	AMAMAKI		
Ama-orali	<p>Ukulungiselelwa kokuhlola kanye nokuhlola ama-orali kwenzeka ngaphakathi esikoleni kanti ukumodereytha kwenzeka ngaphandle kwesikole.</p> <p>• <b>Ukukhuluma:</b> Inkulumo elungiselelwe</p> <p><b>Hlola :</b> Amakhono okucwaninga, uhlaka nokuhlela okuqokethwe, iphimbo, ukukhuluma, kanye nekhono lokwethula, hlolisisa indlela ulimi olusebenziswe ngayo, ukukhetha, ukuklama izinsizakukhuluma kanye nezinsizakukhuluma nokubonwa</p>	2X10	20	50
	<p>• <b>Ukukhuluma</b></p> <p><b>Inkulumo engalungiselelwe</b></p> <p><b>Hlola:</b> Amakhono okucwaninga, uhlaka nokuhlela okuqokethwe, iphimbo, ukukhuluma, kanye nekhono lokwethula, hlolisisa indlela ulimi olusebenziswe ngayo</p>		15	
	<p>• <b>Ukulalela</b></p> <p><b>Ukulalelela ukuqonda</b></p> <p><b>Hlola:</b> Lalelisisa kahle isifundo sokuqondisisa, ulwazi kanye nokulinganisa</p>	15	15	

### 4.5 Ukuqopha kanye nokubika

Ukuqopha kuyinqubo lapho uthisha egcina khona indlela abafundi abasebenze ngayo emathaskhini abehlolwa kuwo. Iveza ukuphumelela kwabafundi ekuzuzeni ulwazi njengalokhu kubekiwe esiTatimendeni seNqubomgomo yoHlelo nokuHlola. Amarekhodi okusebenza kwabafundi anikeza ubufakazi bokukhula komqondo wabafundi ebangeni nokuveza ukuthi sebekulungele ukwedluliselwa ebangeni elilandelayo. Amarekhodi okusebenza kwabafundikumele abuye asetshenziswe ukuqinisekisa inqubekelaphambili eseyenziwe uthisha kanye nabafundi ekufundeni nasekufundiseni.

Ukuqopha kuyinqubo yokuxoxa ngokusebenza kwabafundi kubazali, esikoleni kanye nabanye abambandakanyekayo kwezemfundo. Ukusebenza kwabafundi kungabikwa ngezindlela eziningi ezehlukene. Lokhu kumbandakanya amaripoti, umhlangano wabazali, izinsuku zokuzobona imisebenzi yabafundi esikoleni, ukuxoxisana kukathisha nomzali, ukushaya izingcingo, ukubhalelana Incwadi , inyuziletha yekilasi noma yesikole, njll. Othisha bawo wonke amabanga babika besebenzisa uhlelo lwamaphesenti ngokwezifundo zabo. Amazinga okuphumelela anhlobonhlobo kanye namaphesenti ahambisana nawo atshengisiwe kuleli thebula elingezansi:

**Amakhodi amaphesenti okurekhoda nokubika**

Amakhodi	Incazelo zamakhono	Amamaki ngamaphesenti
7	Impumelelo ngamalengiso	80-100
6	Impumelelo eseqophelweni eliphezulu kakhulu	70-79
5	Impumelelo eseqopheleni eliphezulu	60-69
4	Impumelelo ngokwenelisayo	50-59
3	Impumelelo ngokufanele	40-49
2	Impumelelo ngokuyingxenywe	30-39
1	Impumelelo ngokungenele	0-29

Othisha bazorekhoda uqobo lwamamaki maqondana namathaskhi, ngokusebenzisa iphepha lokurekhoda nokubika amaphesenti amamaki esifundweni ngasinye eripotini lomfundi.

**4.6 Ukumodereytha ukuhlola**

Ukumodareytha kuyinqubo eqinisekisa ukuthi amathaskhi okuhlola alungile, anobuqiniso, athembekile. Ukumodareytha kumele kwenziwe ezikoleni, eziyingini, eziFundazweni kanye nakuZwelonke. Ukumodareytha ngokugcwele nangokufanele kumele kwenziwe ukuqinisekisa ikhwalithi ekuhlolweni kwezifundo zonke.

**4.6.1 Ukuhlola okumiselwe imigomo kwasesikoleni (i-SBA)**

- Izivivinyo kanye nokuhlola kweBanga le-10 nele-11 kumodareytha ngaphakathi. Umeluleki wesifundo kuzomele amodareythe isampula yamathaskhi uma evakashela esikoleni ukuqinisekisa ukuthi amathaskhi abhalwe abafundi asezingeni nokuthi kumodareythe yini ngaphakathi esikoleni.
- Izivivinyo kanye nokuhlola kweBanga le-12 kumele kumodareythe ezingeni lesiFundazwe. Lolu hlelo kumele lwenganyelwe uMnyango wezeMfundo wesiFundazwe.
- Abeluleki besifundo kumele bamodareythe isampula yamaphepha ezivivinyo nokuhlola ngaphambi kokuba abhalwe ukuqinisekisa ukuthi asezingeni elifanele kanye nokwelekelela othisha ekuhlolweni kwamathaskhi azobhalwa abafundi.

**4.6.2 Amathaskhi okuhlolwa kwama-orali**

- IBanga le-10 nele-11:** Wonke amathaskhi ama-orali ayingxenywe yohlelo lokuhlola kumele anikezwe INhloko yoMnyango ukuze amodareythe ngaphambi kokuba abhalwe ngabafundi. Othisha bayawahlola amathaskhi ama-orali eBanganeni le-10 nele-11. Umeluleki wesifundo kumele amodareythe isampula yamathaskhi okuhlola lama-orali uma evakashele izikole ukuqinisekisa ukuthi amathaskhi asezingeni futhi kumodareythe ngaphakathi esikoleni.
- IBanga le-12:** Amathaskhi ama-orali kumele alungiswe abuye ahlolwe ngaphakathi kepha abese emodareytha ngaphandle. Wonke amathaskhi ama-orali ayingxenywe yohlelo lokuhlola kumele anikezwe INhloko yoMnyango ukuze amodareythe ngaphambi kokuba abhalwe ngabafundi. Othisha bayawahlola amathaskhi ama-orali. Umeluleki kumele amodareythe isampula yamathaskhi okuhlola lama-orali uma evakashele izikole ukuqinisekisa ukuthi amathaskhi asezingeni futhi kumodareythe ngaphakathi esikoleni. Isikole ngasinye kumele silethe abafundi abazomela isikole uma sekuzokwenziwa isiqiniseko sokuthi ukusebenza kwabafundi kuma-orali kusezingeni elifanele yini.



#### **4.7 Isiphetho ngamafuphi**

Lo mqulu kumele ufundwe uhambisana nale eminye imiqulu elandelayo:

**4.7.1** Umqulu wenqubomgomo, *I-National Protocol of Assessment Grades R-12*

**4.7.2** *I-National policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the National Curriculum Statement Grades R-12*

## IZINCAZELO ZAMAGAMA

**Ama - alujini** - Ukusebenzisa amagama athile, kube kuqondwe okunye okungashiwongo. (Isib. Ukhohla ngokubona njengoTomasi).

**Amagama aphikisanayo - yigama eliphikisa elinye kulolo limi (isib. khala - hleka) ukufaneleka** - ulimi lusuke lufanelekile uma lusetshenziswe ngendlela ehambisana nesimo

**Amagama asho okufanayo** - (Njengoba eqhathaniswa nalawo asho okuphikisanayo), amagama amqondofana.

**Amakhephshini** - Amagama achaza okusesithombeni. Angabhalwa phezulu kwesithombe noma ezansi kwaso. Inhloso ukuchaza okwenzekayo ( Isib. Isikhangiso sikashukela siba nala magama “ukunika amandla”).

**Amaklishe** - amagama asetshenziswa ngokweqile, afakwe nje noma kungasafanele (Isib. Izingane uma zikhuluma ziyathanda ukuphindaphinda la magama : “Kusho ukuthi..., “ nalapho kungasadingekile).

**Amalitheresi** - izinhlobo ezehlukene zemibhalo (isib. ehlolisayo, ebukwayo, amagrafu).

**Amasu obuciko bokukhuluma** - amasu afana nokusebenzisa ikhefu, ukuphindaphinda okusetshenziswa isikhulumi sibeke inkulumo ngendlela ezwakalayo nevumisayo. Amanye amasu kungaba akhohlisayo, ukuze umuntu avumelame nawe.

**Amatheksthi abonwayo** - izinto ezibonakalayo ezedlulisa umlayezo (isib. imifanekiso yamafilemu, izithombe, okugqanyiswa ngekhompyutha, izilinganiso amakhathuni kanye nemidwebo yokupendiwe).

**Amatheksthi adlulisa imilayezo** - imibhalo yomsebenzi (Isib. Incwadi , amaminithi, imibiko, idayari, umlando womufi).

**Amatheksthi asebenzisa izinhlobo eziningi zokuxhumana** - izinhlobo zezilinganiso okungaba ezibhaliwe, ezibonwayo, imisindo amavidiyo njll.

**Amatheksthi ayiqiniso** - amatheksthi akwaziyo ukuhambisana nempilo ephilwayo, nokwenzeka kwezinto. (isib. amaphephabhuku, ama - athikili, amaphephandaba, okuqoshiwe emsakazweni nakumabonakude, izikhangiso, amalebuli emikhiqizo, amabhrosha okuvakasha, amafomu akwahulumeni, izibonelo zezincwadi zangempela).

**Fanisa** (bheka no - qhathanisa) - ukubheka lokho okwenza ukuthi izinto zifane.

**Hluza:** nikeza uvo lwakho, thatha isinqumo, yakha imibono ngokufundile.

**I - anekhdothi** - lokhu yindatshana ngesehlakalo esake senzeka empilweni yokhulumayo, exoxwa kuphela ngenhloso yokucacisa okuthile noma - ke ukujabulisa, ukuhlelisa noma ukuqgamisa umlingiswa othile.

**I - akhronimi/igamamfingqwa** - igama eliphimisekayo elakhiwa ngokusebenzisa uhlamvu/ izinhlamvu zokuqala zalelo gama noma lowo mushwana (e.g. uTHAFUZWE).

**Icebo** - indlela ethile yokwenza noma yokulungiselela ukuxazulula inkinga.

**Ifanangwaqa** - lisho ukuphinda ongwaqa abafanayo emgqeni ukuze kuvele isigqi (Isib. Zwilileka ngizwe lobuzwili).

**Ifanankamisa** - 1. lisho ukuphinda (ngokuvamile), umsindo wonkamisa abafanayo emagameni amabili noma ngaphezulu (Isib. Yashosholoza intinginoo ewumcondo).

**Ifonti** - uhlobo nobungako bezinhlamvu ezisetshenziswa lapho kubhalwa ngomshini (isib. I - 12pt (ubungako) iTimes New Roman (uhlobo nesitayela sezinhlamvu).

**Ifuzamsindo** - lapha kusetshenziswa igama elimsindo walo ufana nomsindo lowo uchazwayo. Lilingisa umsindo owenziwa yinto ethile ephilayo noma engaphili. Lowo umsindo ofuze umsindo owenziwa enye into (Isib. UMelusi wavuswa ubugodlogodlo besitmela).

**Igama elisuselwe kwelinye** - leli yigama elisuselwe kwelinye, noma emsukeni; ngokwejwayelekile lakhiwa ngokuphongoza nangokujobelela izakhi.

**Ihaba** - liwukwandisa lokho okukhulunywa ngakho kuzwakale sengathi kukhulu kakhulu kunalokho okuyikhona ngempela (Isib. Isigelekeqe sangibuka ngezimbokodwe zamehlo).

**I - inthavyu (i - inthavyu)** - umsebenzi wokuqoqa ulwazi noma ingxoxo yabantu yobuso nobuso ngenhloso ethile.

**Ijagoni** - amatemu angavamile asetshenziswa emsebenzini noma eqenjini elithile (Isib. Abasebenza ngamakhompyutha bakhuluma nge - "CPU", "RAM", njll.). Uma ijagoni isetshenziselwe ukubandlulula izethameli ekubambeni iqhaza kungakhubaza futhi kungaba yingozi.

**Incazelo eqondile (bhaka negudliselayo)** - incazelo yegama ngokulandelana kwamazwi, kodwa kube kungaqondliwe lawo magama ngempela.

**Indawo engaphambili (uma iqhathaniswa nesendlalelo)** - ngokulandela izwi nezwi elibhaliwe, kusho ukuma kwento ukusondeza into ethwetshulwayo eduze, kanti empeleni kushiwo ukugcizelela ukuvezwa kakhulu kwengxenywe ethile ukwedlula ezinye izingxenywe.

**Indida** - ukubeka inkulumo ngendlela ephicayo engqondweni.

**Inggikithi** - umongo walokho okuxhunywana ngakho. Itheksthi ingaba nomongo ongaphezulu kowodwa, futhi kungenzeka ungabi sobala.

**Inkolelo engaguquki** - lena yinkolelo esezimpandeni maqondana neqhaza okumele libanjwe ngumuntu othile.

**Inkulumo - mpikiswano** - lapha amaqembu amabili ayaqophisana. Bonke bahlose ukuheha abehlulelayo kanye nezethameli ukuthi icala labo yilo elizwakala kangcono kunalelo lelinye iqembu.

**Inkundla** - iqembu lingakhuluma noma liqophisane nelinye lakwesinye isikole, noma ekilasini, ngokwehlukana abafundi ngamaqembu amane, kube yilowo nalowo akhulume ngengxenywe ethile yesihloko. Owahlulelayo usezobheka ukuthi yiliphi eliphuma phambili.

**Iphimbo** - iphimbo ledlulisa umyalezo wamatheksthi ethulwa ngomlomo. Ematheksthini alotshiwe iphimbo lizwakala ngamagama awakhethile umlobi ukuze aveze isimo sakhe. Ezithombeni zebhayisikobho iphimbo lingakhiwa ngomculo noma indlela umdlalo ohleleke ngayo esiteji.

**Irejista** - ukusetshenziswa kwamagama ehlukeneyo, isitayela, uhlelo iphimbo ithoni ezimweni ezehlukene (isib. imiqulu yakomkhulu ibhalwa kusetshenziswa irejista esemthethweni, ebekelwe izimiso).

**Isakhiwana** - isehlakalo esenzeka kanye naleso esikhulu /esisemqoka enovelini noma emdlalweni.

**Isakhiwo** - ubudlelwano beehlakalo ezisemqoka etheksthini, isingeniso, udweshu, isixakaxaka, uvuthondaba kanye

nesiphetho sakho konke lokhu.

**Isakhiwo esisusa usinga** - (1) indlela elandela izwi nezwi okubhalwa ngayo imidlalo. (2) ukuhleleka kwesakhiwo izigcawu nezinkundla, abadlali kanye nezimpawu zolimi emdlalweni.

**Isathaya** - uhlobo lwamatheksthi lapho umlobi ezwakala sengathi uyancoma kanti uyabhuqa, ngokuhlekisa ngalowo amgxekeyo usuke eqonde ukuba ukuhlonipheka kwakhe kwehle, lokho kuhlekwa kwesekelwe emaphutheni. Isikhali esisemqoka sesathaya ukuhlelekisa ngalowo ogxekeyo.

**Isifanekiso** - (1). ukuthola ukufana ezintweni ezibukeka zihlukile. (2) ukuthola ukufana ezintweni ezibukeka zihlukile, indlela yokuchaza okuthile, kodwa akusibona ubufakazi. Qaphela isifanekiso okungesona. Kumele kube nokuqondana okucacile phakathi kwento echazwayo kanye neminingwane yaleyo okufanekiswa nayo.

**Isifaniso** - lapha kuqhathaniswa izinto ezimbili ezingafani ngoba kukhona okuthile okunobudlelwane phakathi kwazo. Sandulelwa yizakhi zokufanisa o - njenga - , fana, kuhle, okwe - , - sa - (UThuthukile muhle kuhle kwelanga liphuma).

**Isihlanganiso** - igama elisetshenziswa ukuhlanganisa imisho (Isib. UNoxolo ungumdlali ovelele esikoleni futhi uzimisele nasezifundweni zakhe).

**Isihloko esichaza indaba** - lesi yisihloko noma ukuphawula esinanyekwe ngenhla noma ngezansi kwe - athikili, kwesithombe njll.

**Isihlonipho** - igama elisetshenziswa endaweni yelinye elihlambalazayo. (Isib. Ukudakwa - ukusutha, ukuhlanza - ukubuyisa).

**Isingathekiso** - ukukhuluma ngokufanekisa izinto ezingafani ubiza into ngenye (Isib. USinenhlanhla akamuhle yilanga liphuma).

**Isinyathelo** - yindlela okwethulwa ngayo okuthile, indlela yokuxhumana (isib. isinyathelo isibhaliwe, esikhulunywayo, esibukwayo (okuhlanganisa amashadi namagrafu), ulwazi lungaguqulwa luseke esinyathelweni esithile kuye kwesinye, (isib. ukuguqula igrafu ibe isiqephu).

**Isiqgi** - imisindo efanayo elokhu ivele njalo.

**Isisusa** - (bheka **nomphumela**) - yilokho okudala udweshu nesimo.

**Isitatimende esingaphelele** - ukusho okuthile ngokungagcwele esikhundleni sokunikeza yonke iminingwane/amaphuzu, ukuze kugcizelelwe.

**Isitayela** - indlela umbhali ahlela ngayo amagama ukuze afeze izinhloso ezithile. Isitayela sihlanganisa ubunjalo bombhali nombono afuna ukuwubeka. La malungiselelo ambandakanya ukukhethwa kwamagama wumbhali kanyen nezakhiwo nobungako bemisho, iphimbo, nokusetshenziswa kombhinqo.

**Isithombe** - umfanekiso wento ethile.

**Isu lokuhlasela amagama** - isu elisetshenziswa uma kufundwa amagama angaziwa (isib. Ukulingqamula igama ngamalunga kuphinde kubhekwe iziphongozo nezijobelelo zalo, kufuniselwa incazelo).

**Isu lokusebenzisa umshini wokubonisa imifanekiso yebhayisikobho** - yicebo elisetshenziswa ekwakheni ifilimu (isib. ukuhlanganisa, izibani, izinhobo nezindlela zokuthwebula).

**Itheksthi** - isitatimende noma okuqanjiwe okwethulwa ngomlomo, okulotshiwe noma okubukelwayo ngenhloso yokuxhumana.

**Izethameli** - (1). Umfundi, umlaleli, umbukeli oqondiwe wamatheksthi athize, lapho kwenziwa uhlaka lwesiqeshana esilotshwayo izikhulumi/abalobi kumele bacabange ngenhloso nezethameli lapho bekhetha uhlobo lokubhalwayo. (2) empeleni izethameli yilabo bantu abeze ukuzobukela umdlalo noma umculo.

**Izifengqo** (njengoba kuqhathaniswa nolimi olubheka ukulandelana nje kwamagama) - amagama noma imishwana esetshenziswa ngendlela engabeki izinto obala (isib. isifaniso, isenzasamuntu, isingathekiso njalonzalo).

**Izimiso** - imithetho nemikhuba eyamukelekile olimini. Ezinye izimiso ziyasiza ukwedlulisa umlayezo ( isib. imithetho yohlelo, izimpawu zokukhuluma, uhlobo oluthile lokubhala izinhlamvu nosonhlamvukazi.); ezinye zisiza ekwethuleni okuphethwe (isib. okuqukethwe, isimo sombhalo, izihloko, izenezezelo, amashadi, izihloko ezichaza indaba, izinhlu, izithombe nezinamba, ezinye izimiso zikhombisa amaphethini olimi asaphenduka umthetho okumele ulandelwe (isib. ukubingelela nokunye).

**Izimo** - ngaso sonke isikhathi, itheksthi ibhalwa isetshenziswe ezimweni ezithile, isimo simbandakanya indawo eyendlalekile kanye neqoqekile, kuhambisana nezimo zasekuhlaleni, isikompilo kanye nezepolitiki, isimo singabuye sisho lokhu okuza kuqala noma ngemuva kwagama noma kwetheksthi.

**Izindlela ezahlukeni zokusetshenziswa kolimi** - lokhu kwenzeka uma kukuncane kakhulu okuzuziwe olimini maqondana nolwazimagama, ukwakhekha nokuphinyiswa kwawo, lokhu - ke kuyehluka ngokwezindawo lapho ulimi lukhulunywa khona.

**Izingxoxo zamapheneli** - kwakhiwa amaqembu azoxoxisana ngesihloko, kuphendulwe imibuzo ngomsebenzi.

**Izinhlobo zemibhalo** - imbhalo yehlukaniswa ngezinhlobo zawo; kungaba inoveli, umdlalo, izinkondlo, incwadi yakomkhulu noma incwadi yobungani

**Izwi** - indawo yomlobi, ngenkathi kufundwa kubukelwe, ofundayo uyakwazi ukuthola umbono wombhalo kanye nenhloso yakhe.

**Izwi lomxoxi** - yizwi lomuntu oxoxa indaba (isib. kuyabonakala uma kungumuntu wokuqala “ngi...” okunguyena mlingiswa endabeni, noma umuntu wesithathu lapho umxoxi ekhuluma ngo “u...”, no “ba...”.

**Okuqondiwe** (uma kuqhathaniswa **nokubhaliwe**) - yilokho okushiwo yitheksthi kodwa kube kungagaguliwe.

**Okushiwoyo** (uma kuqhathaniswa **nokucacisiwe**) yilokho okuqondiwe etheksthini kodwa kube kungabekiwe kwagqama.

**Okusobala** (uma kuqhathaniswa **nokufihlekile**) - ukubeka inkulumo ngendlela elula neqondile kusetshenziswa amagama njengoba enjalo.

**Okzimoroni** - ukusetshenziswa kwamazwi ndawonye amqondo wawo uphikisanayo, asetshenziswa ngehloso yokuveza okuthile, ngokwejoyalekile asetshenziswa nezichasiso ezichaza ibizo elimumethe umqondo oliphikisayo. (Isib. UJabulani ukhathazwa ubugqili benkululeko).

**Ubuliminingi obengezayo** - nxa umuntu efunda ulimi (noma izilimi) ukwengeza olimini lwakhe lwasekhaya. Lolu limi aluthathi isikhundla solimi lwasekhaya kodwa lufundwa kanye nalo. Ohlelweni lokufunda ubuliminingi obengeziwe, ULimi LwaseKhaya liyaqiniswa lugcinwe, ngenkathi olunye ulimi olufundwayo luthathwa njengolimi olwengezwayo nje (isib. Zonke izilimi ezengeziwe, kumbandakanya uLimi lokuFunda nokuFundisa, zifundiswa zihambisana noLimi lwasEkhaya, kodwa azithathi isikhundla salo.

**Ubuviyoviyo** - (1) (ukusho ngephimbo lokucula) - iphethini lephimbo lenkulumo elibonisa izakhiwo zohlelo njengemisho nemishwana. (2) Lokhu kuphinda kusize ukwehlukanisa phakathi kwesitatimende nombuzo, kuveze nemizwa nesimo sokhulumayo.

**Udweshu** - ukungqubuzana noma ukwehluka kwemibono yabalingiswa endabeni kanye nezimo zabo; udweshu emibhalweni lungabangwa nawukungqubuzana kwezifiso noma lokho umuntu akwazisayo noma akukhonzile.

**Uhlaka oluwubulwembu** - uhlaka olumele isihloko nezindikimba okulungiswa kulo imibono namagama okuzobhalwa ngawo.

**Ukubhuqa** - inkulumo esebenzisa amazwi aziswana ngenhloso yokucasula noma yokuhlekisa ngomuntu.

**Ukubika** - (okumiselwe imigomo izimiso nokungamiselwe migomo zimiso), ukunikeza ulande ngokwenzekile (isib. ngengozi eyenzeke ubhekile).

**Ukucabangela** - ukusebenzisa umkhondo obhaliwe noma obukwayo ukuthola lokho okungagagulwanga embhalweni.

**Ukucacisa** - ukwenza ukuthi umqondo wetheksthi uzwakale kofundayo.

**Ukuchema** - (1) Umkhuba wokuthanda into noma umbono ngaphezu komunye, lokho bese kuholela ekuthini umuntu angabe esakwazi ukuthatha isahlulelo esifanele. (2) Uma kudlalwa umdlalo wezingane wokuqagela ukuthi into efunjethwe ingakusiphi isandla, bese umlahla oqagelayo ngokwenza sengathi uyifumbathela kwesinye isandla kanti wenzela ukuthi ehluleke ukuqagela.

**Ukucwasana** - ukungabekezelelani nokwahlulela umuntu noma iqembu labantu, umbono noma umbango.

**Ukudidiyela** - lo umthetho wemfundo othi umuntu unelungelo lokufunda. Okuncane okudingekayo kubafundi bonke kucacisiwe ukuze labo abanezidingo ezingavamile, izidingo ngokwemizwa nangokomzimba balungiselelwe.

**Ukufanisa** (bheka **nokuqhathanisa**) - ukubheka indlela izinto ezehluka ngayo.

**Ukufingqa** - ukubeka lthekesthi noma umqondo ngamagama ambalwa.

**Ukufunda ngokukha phezulu** - ukuhambisa etheksthini ukuze uthole imininingwane ebalulekile yokwesekela (isib. ukufunda ngokushesha umqulu wamagama nezinombolo zezingcingo).

**Ukufunda ngokushesha** - ukufunda lthekesthi ngesivivini esikhulu ukuze kutholakale umqondo osemqoka (isib. ukufunda izihloko, izingeniso nezigaba zokuqala zephephandaba ukuze wazi izindaba ezisemqoka).

**Ukufunisela** - ukusho okuqondiwe kodwa kungacacisiwe etheksthini, uze usho nokuthi kungahle kwenzekeni ngemuva kwalokho.

**Ukugeleza** - leli yigama elathathelwa ekugelezeni komfula elisho ukunamathelana nokulandelana okunikeza ulimi ubunjalo balo ngokwemvelo, ukusetshenziswa nokuhunyushwa kwalo kalula.

**Ukugigiyela** - ukusho into engemnandi ngendlela egigiyelayo kunokuyisho kuqonde ngqo.

**Ukuhalamuza** - Ukufunda ngesivini esikhulu, ukha phezu, ufunda izihloko ngenhloso yokuthola masishane ukuthi kuthiwani.

**Ukuhlanekezela** - inkulumo eqhathanisa izinto ezimbili ezingafani neziqhelelene.

**Ukuhlelwa kwemiqondo** - ukuhlanganisa imiqondo/imibono ethathwe emithonjeni yolwazi eyahlukene. Isifengqo saleyo mibono ehlanganiswe.

**Ukuhlola** - indlela ehlelekile neqhubekayo yokuthola ulwazi ngamakhono omfundi okwenzeka ngezindlela ezehlukene.

**Ukuhlola kwangaphandle** - ukuhlola okwenziwa ngabantu okungebona abaleso sikole. Ngokuvamile kuba amaphepha avela emNyangweni WezemFundo.

**Ukuhlola okuqhubekayo** - ukuhlola imisebenzi yabafundi okwenziwa kusukela unyaka uqala uze uyophela.

**Ukuhlongoza** - ukuqala ukwenza into (isib. ukuqala ingxoxo) ukubikezela (okuwukuveza kafushane okuzokwenzeka).

**Ukujejeza emuva** - okuwulwazi oluthile olwedlule olwelekelela ukuqonda isimo esithile.

**Ukukhuluma ngezitho zomzimba** - kulapho okhulumayo esesebenzisa ubuso noma isitho esithile somzimba ukucacisa lokho akushoyo (isib. anganqekuzisa ikhanda ekhombisa ukuvumelana nokushiwoyo).

**Ukulanda** - ukusho izehlakalo ezihlangene ezikhulunywayo noma ezibhaliwe zishiwo ngokulandelana kwazo, endabeni.

**Ukulandelana** - ukuhlanganiswa kwemisho ngezihlanganiso, izabizwana nokuphindaphinda.

**Ukulungisa amaphutha** - inqubo yokuphindaphinda ubhala uhlaka lwetheksthini, kuhlangene nokulungisa uhlelo kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi, izimpawu zokubhala, ukulungisa isipelingi, ubuye ubheke nokubhala imibono ngendlela ezwakalayo nesakhiwo silandelane kahle.

**Ukunikezelana amathuba** - izinqubo ezizimase ukunganqamuki kokuxhumana kwabantu ababili, njengokunikeza abanye ithuba lokubeka imibono yabo, ukuphinda okushoyo ukuze okuqondiwe kucace, ukungena nxa kusaxoxwa ukuze kubuyiswe abedukayo, ukwenanela ngemibuzo ukuze kucaciswe okuthile.

**Ukuphinda ufunde** - ukuphinda ufunde yisu elipha nofundayo ithuba lokuthi agcine eseqonda lokho okubhalwe etheksthini.

**Ukuphinda usho** - leli yisu lokufunda lapho umfundi exoxa futhi, afingqe umqondo wesahluko noma wesiqephu, angakwenza ngomlomo noma ngokubhala.

**Ukuqaphela ngokuhlolisisa indlela ulimi olusebenza ngayo** - ngokuhlolisisa ukuthi umqondo wakhiwa kanjani, ukukhumbula amandla obudlelwano obukhona phakathi kwezilimi, kwenza umfundi aqine angavumi ukukhohliseka, futhi asebenzise ulimi ngokuqaphela.

**Ukuqinisa izwi, umbono** - ( egameni noma emshweni) ukufaka umfutho.

**Ukuvusa** - isu lokusebenzisa uhide lwezithombe ezimile ukwakha into engekho kube sengathi ikhona.

**Ukuzwakala** - ukukhipha izwi ngokukhulumela phezulu, ngendlela ezwakalayo, ecacile nexhumana kahle nezethameli.

**Ukuzwakala** - (1) ikhono lokwazi ukuqonda nokweneka ngohlelo izindaba, yikho okwenza ubudlelwano obuhlanganisa kahle imibono ukuze isigaba sinikeze umqondo ozwakalayo nobumbene. (2) Kungabuye kusho ukuba nolwazi olwenele lohlelo, ukuze kwedluliswe kahle umlayezo, noma - ke isakhiwo esihle somusho. Uma uhlelo luxovekile, umusho awuzwakali kahle.

**Ukwazi ukufunda nokubhala** - ikhono lokwazi ukufunda nokubhala nokusebenzisa ulwazi ezimweni nangezinhlalo ezehlukene, nokubhalela izinhloso ezehlukene. Ukwazi ukuguqula lthekele ebhalwe ngamagama angejwayelekile kube ajwayelekile, ukuze umuntu oqonde ngendawo aphila kuyo.

**Ukwazisa ubuhle bolimi** - (1) Ukuthinteka ngobuhle bolimi okuholela ekuthintekeni nokuthi kuthokozelwe amagugu asematheksthini. (2) ukwazisa ubuhle bolimi kusho ubuhle obutholakala ematheksthini. Kungaxoxiswa ngobuhle bomsebenzi obhaliwe kuze kuthathwe nezinqumo ngawo.

**Ukwehlukana** - ukuthola umehluko okhona phakathi kwezinto.

**ULimi lokwEngeza** (bheka **noLimi LwaseKhaya**) - ulimi olufundwayo kwengezwa kolwasekhaya lomfundi.

**ULimi LwaseKhaya** (bheka **noLimi lokuQala lokwEngeza**) - ulimi olufundwa yingane ngokulingisa ekhaya, ulimi esicabanga ngalo.

**Ulimi lwemibhalo** - ulimi olusetshenziswa lapho kukhulunywa ngemibhalo kumbandakanya amagama afana nesimo, isitayela, isakhiwo nenkulumompendulwano.

**Ulimi lwendawo (isidolobha)** - ulimi olusetshenziswa ngabantu nje ezingxoxweni ezithile, kodwa olungasetshenziswa njengolimi olusemthethweni.

**Ulimi lwesifunda/lwesigodi** - ulimi olusetshenziswa ngumphakathi othile, luyehluka kwezinye izinhlobo zalo lona lolu limi ngokwamagama, isakhiwo nokuphinyiswa kwamagama.

**Ulimi olukhohlisayo** - ulimi olunamandla lokuthi umuntu akholwe futhi ebe engaboni ukuthi uyakhohliswa, isib. Inkulumbo yezepolitiki, inkulumbo yokuthengisa, isikhangiso njll.

**Ulimi olungemukelekile** - ulimi olungesona isiZulu soqobo njengesidolobha, isihumusha,

**Ulimi oluthinta imizwa** - ulimi oluvusa imizwa kolalele/kofundayo.

**Umabizwafane** - yigama elibhalwa ngekuvana liphinyiswe ngokufana, kodwa lisho izinto ezingefani. (isib. **Ibala** - igceke, **ibala** - isibazi).

**Umbhalomdwebo** - umbhalo owethulwe ngemidwebo ( ukudweba noma ukubumba okuthile).

**Umbhinqo** - ukusebenzisa amazwi achaza okuthile kepha kube kuqondwe okuphambene nawo. Kusuke kusetshenziswe amazwi okuncoma kuqondwe ukugxeka (Isib. Kuyabonakala ukuthi bekuhlala inono kule ndlu yiko kungcolile: kuqondwe ukuthi bekuhlala inuku).

**Umbhinqo osusa usinga** - lokhu kwenzeka uma izethameli/ofundayo/obukele azi ngaphezu kwabadlali ngesimo nokuzolandela, okushubisa umoya kujabulise nezethameli, zize zibe yingxenye yokwenzekayo.



**Umbono wombhali** - indawo yomlingiswa maqondana nezimo enovelini noma emdlalweni.

**Umbuzombumbulu** - wumbuzo osuke ungabuzelwa ukuthola impendulo, ngoba impendulo yawo ikhona kuwo (Uthi uyazi nje ukuthi unenhlanhla kangakanani?)

**Umfakela** - igama elakhiwe lisuselwe kolunye ulimi.

**Umfanekiso ogqamisa isimo esithile somuntu** - (1) Yindlela enehaba yokuveza umlingiswa (kungaba okubhaliwe noma okubukwayo), okuzuzwa ngokumlingisa umlingiswa noma ukubukeka kwakhe. (2) Imidwebi yomdwebi emaphephandabeni ivame ukuthatha lesi simo ngokwenza umfanekiso womlingiswa ube yihaba ukuze kuhlekwe noma avele ngendlela emthunazayo nesambhinqo.

**Umfanekiso - mqondo** - amagama, imishwana nemisho eyakha izithombe engqondweni; isib. Isifaniso, isingathekiso, nesenzasamuntu.

**Umgqumo** - amagama noma imigqa esebenzisa ukuvumelana kwephimbo ekugcineni kwemigqa.

**Umkhondosimo** - ukusetshenziswa kwagama elincike kulelo elingaziwa ukuze kufuniselwe umqondo. Leli lisu lokufunda lingasetshenziswa kanye nesifundo solwazimagama.

**Umlayezo osobala** (uma uqhathaniswa **nocashile**) - umlayezo oqondile nosobala.

**Umoja** - isimo somoya etheksthini, ukhombisa imizwa noma isimo senqondo yomlingiswa, kuphinda kusho nesimo esivezwa amatheksthi abonwayo, azwakalayo kanye nalawo esebenzisa izinhlobo eziningi zokuxhumana.

**Umphumela** (bheka **isisusa**) - umphumela wesehlakalo noma isimo.

**Umqondo odidayo** - umqondo ombaxa odalwa yindlela okusetshenziswe ngayo amagama, ngokuthi asetshenziswe budedengu, ukuxoveka kanjena kwamagama kulahla umqondo.

**Umusho oqondile** - ubonakala ngesilandiso esisodwa ( Isib. Umama upheka uphuthu).

**Umusho ombaxa** - Usebenzisa izilandiso ezimbili okusho ukuthi wakhiwa ngokuhlanganisa imisho eqondile emibili (Isib. umama upheka uphuthu ngaphambi kokuba ahambe).

**Umusho omagatshagatsha** - Uba nezilandiso ezintathu noma ngaphezulu, okusho ukuthi uhlunganisa imisho engaphezulu kwemibili ( Isib. Angisazi manje ukuthi ngiyenze kanjani le nto ngoba iyangehlula).

**Umushwana** - isibonelo “indoda eyayigqoke ihembe elibomvu yabaleka” Umushwana oyinhloko - “indoda yabaleka”. Amagama athi “ eyayigqoke ihembe elibomvu”, umushwana okhonzile. Awukwazi ukuzimela wodwa nanxa sikhona isenzo kuwona. Imishwana ekhonzile iqala ngesihlanganiso (uma kuwumushwana okhonzile omele isizathu). Eminye imishwana ekhonzile iqala ngezivumelwano zesichasiso; isib. (e.) “eyayigqoke...” (u “ e ” isiv. sesibaluli). Isihlanganiso sihlunganisa umushwana nomusho, siphinde sihlunganise imisho emibili ephelele.

**Uphawu** - igama elithatha noma limela indawo yenye into (Isib. 1. Inkondlo ingakhuluma ngesihlahla, ichaze ukuthi sikhula kanjani nokuthi ekugcineni siyagawulwa. Isihlahla singamela umuntu okhulayo ophetha ngokufa. Isib. 2. imibala yefulegi laseNingizimu Afrika).

**Upholavuthondaba** - uma obekulindelwe, okubalulekile obekumele kwenzeke, kungazange kusenzeka noma ukubaluleka kwesakhiwo sombhalo kuvele kwalahleke nje ngenxa yokuphazamiseka okudalwe yihlaya elithile, noma ukuphambuka nje okungabalulekile. Abanye bathi ibohlololo, ukwehla komfutho wendaba.

**Uteku** - izimo nezinto ezethulwa ngendlela ehlekisayo nekitazayo.

**Uteku** - ukudlala ngamagama aphemiseka ngokufanayo ukuze kuhlekwe noma ukwethula izimo nezinto ngendlela ehlekisayo nekitazayo.

**Uvuthondaba** - izinga lapho indaba ingasakwazi ukuqhubeka nokuphakama, isuke isifike esiphethweni.

# I-APHENDIKSI: IZAKHIWO KANYE NEZIMISO ZOLIMI (ISHADI OKUMELE KUBHEKWE KULO)

IZAKHIWO NEZIMISO ZOLIMI	
Ukuthuthukiswa kolwazimagama kanye nokusetshenziswa kolimi	
<p>Omabizwafane</p> <p>Amagama aphikisanayo</p> <p>Ophimbohluka</p> <p>Amabizo amqondo mningi</p> <p>Igama elilodwa elimele amaningi</p> <p>Izifenqo (isifaniso, isingathekiso, ukwenzasamuntu, ukwenzasasilwane, ihaba, ukubhinqa, indida, i-okzimoroni, anakhronizimu, uvuthondaba, upholavuthondaba, umbizi, ifuzamsindo, ukuhlanekezela)</p> <p>Izaga</p> <p>Izisho</p> <p>Amagama okwebolekwa</p> <p>Amagama anezincazelo ezintsha (neologisms)</p> <p>Umsuka wamagama (etymology)</p>	
Izakhiwo zemisho nezimiso zokusetshenziswa kolimi	
<b>Izakhi zamagama</b>	Iziqalo, imisuka, iziqu kanye nezijobelelo
<b>Amabizo</b>	<p>Amabizoqho</p> <p>Amabizongxube</p> <p>Amabizomuntu</p> <p>Amabizonto</p> <p>Amabizomvama</p> <p>Amabizombaxa</p> <p>Amabizoqoqa</p> <p>Ubulili</p> <p>Ubuningi</p> <p>Izinciphiso</p> <p>Izikhuliso</p> <p>Amabizo asuselwa kwezinye izingcezu zenkulumo</p>
<b>Izabizwana</b>	<p>Sokukhomba</p> <p>Soqobo</p> <p>Senani</p> <p>Sesichasiso</p>

<b>Izenzo ezizimele kanye nezenzo ezisetshenziswa nezinye izenzo</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inkathi yamanje</li> <li>• Inkathi ezayo</li> <li>• Inkathi eyedlule</li> <li>• Izenzo ezisabizo</li> <li>• Izenzo-             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Eziphundlekile</li> <li>o Ezilunga linye</li> <li>o Ezimalungamabili</li> <li>o Ezimalungamaningi</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Izenzo ezidinga umenziwa (transitive)</li> <li>• Izenzo ezingamdingi umenziwa (intransitive)</li> <li>• Izingazenzo</li> <li>• Izinsizasenzo</li> <li>• Isibanjalo</li> <li>• Izimpambosi</li> <li>• Izindlela zesenzo:             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Eyesimo</li> <li>o Encikile</li> <li>o Esabizo</li> <li>o Eyamandla</li> <li>o Ephoqayo</li> <li>o Eqondisayo</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Isichasiso</b>	Isiphawulo Isibaluli Ongumnini Inani
<b>Isandiso</b>	Sendawo Sesimo Senkathi Esikhomba isizathu Esikhomba okusetshenzisiwe
<b>Izindlela zokubuza imibuzo</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Emishweni evumayo</li> <li>• Emishweni ephikayo</li> </ul>
<b>Imisho kanye nemishwana</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Umusho oqondile</li> <li>• Umusho ombaxa</li> <li>• Umusho omagatsha             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Umshwana okhonzile ochazayo</li> <li>o Umshwana okhonzile okhanyisayo</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Inkulumo ngqo kanye nenkulumo ewumbiko</li> <li>• Izivumelwano</li> <li>• Ukuphika</li> </ul>

<b>Izihlanganiso kanye namagama aveza ukushintsha kwenkulumo</b>	<p>Ukulandelana ngokwesikhathi/ukulandelana ngokohlelo oluthile: okokuqala, okwesibili, okwesithathu, uma, ngemuva, kwaze, ekugcineni, okulandelayo, phambilini, ngemuva kwalokho.</p> <p>Hlaziya/bheka imbangela nomphumela: nakuba, yingakho, yingoba, ngesizathu, kusukela, okuholele, yingoba, ngakho-ke, kulanda ukuthi, uma, ngakho, njll.</p> <p>Inqubo: okokuqala, okwesibili, okwesithathu, njll.</p> <p>Qhathanisa/hlukanisa: okufanayo, umehluko, mncane kuna-, mkhulu kuna-, kodwa, njll.</p> <p>Beka ngokwamazinga okubaluleka: njalo nje, ekugcineni, njll.</p> <p>Hlela ngokwenkomba yezimpawu: phezulu, phansi, kwesokudla, kwesokunxele, njll.</p> <p>Ingxubevange yezihlanganiso: ngokwejoyalekile, sengiphetha, njll.</p> <p>Izigaba ezikhethiwe: <u>ngokwami ukubona</u>, <u>umbono</u>, <u>inkolelo</u>, <u>ukuqonda</u>, <u>ngicabanga ukuthi</u>, <u>ngikholwa ukuthi</u>, <u>kubukeka sengathi kimina</u>, <u>ngincamela/ngikhetha/ngethemba/</u> <u>Ngaphatheka</u>, njll.</p> <p>Isigaba esibeka izinto ngononina: <u>kufana nokuthi</u>, <u>kungahlukaniswa</u>, <u>kungenza ngaphansi kwe</u>, <u>kuhambisana ne</u>, <u>kuhlukaniswa ne</u>, njll.</p> <p>Izigaba ezichazayo: <u>ngaphezulu</u>, <u>ngaphansi</u>, <u>eceleni</u>, <u>ngaphandle</u>, <u>eduze</u>, <u>empumalanga</u>, <u>entshonalanga</u>, <u>eningizimu</u>, <u>enyakatho</u>, ubungako, umbala, <u>isilinganiso</u>, <u>inhloso</u>, <u>ubude</u>, <u>ubukhulu</u>, <u>isisindo</u>, <u>kufana nokuthi</u>, njll.</p> <p>Isigaba esilinganisayo: <u>kuhle/kubi</u>, <u>kulungile/akulungile</u>, <u>kusobala/kubalulekile</u>, <u>ncoma</u>, <u>nxusa</u>, <u>beka umbono</u>, <u>nikeza izeluleko</u>, <u>okwamukelekile/okungamulekanga</u>, njll.</p> <p>Izigaba ezinikeza incazelo: <u>kuchazwa ngokuthi</u>, <u>kungafaniswa nokuthi</u>, njll.</p> <p>Isigaba esiyisiphetho: <u>ukuphetha</u>, <u>ukusonga</u>, <u>ukugogqa</u>, <u>ngamafuphi</u>, njengoba nibona, njll.</p>
<b>Izenzokuthi</b>	Dekle! Bhuklu!
<b>Izibabazo</b>	Hhawu! Maye babo!
<b>Izimpawu zokuloba</b>	Ikhonco, ikholoni, isemikhloni, i-apostrofi, abacaphuni, umbuzi, umbabazi, ungqi, njll.
<b>Isipelingi</b>	Indlela amagama apelwa ngayo, imithetho yokupela kanye nezimiso zakhona nezifinyezo
<b>Ukuhlolisisa indlela ulimi olusetshenziswa ngayo</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Iqiniso kanye nombono.</li> <li>Incazelo eqondile kanye negudliselayo.</li> <li>Umqondo osobala kanye nojulile.</li> <li>Okuphathelene nezenhlalo nombusazwe kanye namasiko ababhali.</li> <li>Umthelela wokufakwa kanye nokweqiwa kwamagama encazelweni.</li> <li>Ubudlelwano phakathi kolimi kanye nesikhundla somuntu ophethe.</li> <li>Ulimi oluchukuluza/oluvusa/oluthinta imizwa, oluvumisayo, ukuchema, ukubandlulula, ukucwasa, inkolelo engaguquki, izindlela ezehlukene zokusebenzisa ulimi, isib. Ulimi lwesigodi, ijagoni, ukucabangela okungahle kwenzeke, ukuqagula, indlela yokucabanga inhloso yokufaka noma yokukhipha ulwazi oluthile.</li> </ul>	

